

☛ The Chronicle of the Abbey of Bury St. Edmunds

by *Jocelin of Brakelond*; to which are appended several medieval

accounts of the life of St. Edmund by *Abbo of*

Fleury, *Ælfric of Eynsham*, and an anonymous

author commonly identified with *Robert of*

Gloucester; here reprinted in their original

Latin, Anglo-Saxon, and Middle

English with adjacent trans-

lations, notes, & glosses;

prepared by R. Creswell,

O X F O R D :

an.do. MMXXI.

* *

*

CRONICA

JOCELINI

DE BRAKELONDA,

DE REBUS GESTIS SAMSONIS

ABBATIS MONASTERII



SANCTI ÆDMUNDI.

Cronica de rebus gestis Samsonis abbatis

(Harl. MS. 1005 ff. 127r–170v)

Jocelin of Brakelond

Frontispiece—

G. F. Sargent and J. C. Varrall in *The Book of Shakespeare Gems: In a Series of Landscape Illustrations of the Most Interesting Localities of Shakespeare's Dramas*, Bohn, London, 1846.

Latin text—

Ed. T. Arnold: *Memorials of St. Edmund's Abbey*, Vol. 1, *Rerum Britannicarum Medii Ævi Scriptores*, The Lords Commissioners of Her Majesty's Treasury, Under the Direction of the Master of the Rolls, London, 1890.

English translation, introduction and footnotes—

Trans. ed. L. C. Jane, intr. Abbot Gasquet: *The Chronicle of Jocelin of Brakelond, Monk of St. Edmundsbury: A Picture of Monastic and Social Life in the XIITH Century*, Chatto & Windus, London, 1907.

*“Fly, noble English, you are bought and sold;
Unthread the rude eye of rebellion
And welcome home again discarded faith.
Seek out King John and fall before his feet;
For if the French be lords of this loud day,
He means to recompense the pains you take
By cutting off your heads: thus hath he sworn
And I with him, and many moe with me,
Upon the altar at Saint Edmundsbury;
Even on that altar, where we swore to you
Dear amity and everlasting love.”*

EDITORIAL REMARKS.

The paragraphs, headings, and numbered footnotes are those of L. C. Jane's translation, as it appeared in the 1907 edition of Chatto & Windus. Where not completely redundant, T. Arnold's (Rolls ed., 1890) marginalia and notes have been reproduced as obelus footnotes in the Latin text. Minor printing errors have been corrected throughout. The Fell Types (title page) were digitally reproduced by Igino Marini (www.iginomarini.com).

NOTE CONCERNING CURRENCY.

The *mark* is an archaic northern European weight unit, typically divided into eight *ounces* (of some specification), and used particularly for the measurement of gold and silver. In Norman England it was a unit of account worth 160 pennies (13s. 4d. or two-thirds of a pound), *i.e.*, one mark weight of silver, provided that the pennies were not debased. The English pennies of the late twelfth and thirteenth centuries contained approximately 1.4 grams of fine silver, and were worth about a half day's wage.

A VERITABLE MONK OF BURY ST. EDMUNDS IS WORTH ATTENDING TO, IF BY CHANCE MADE VISIBLE AND AUDIBLE. HERE HE IS; AND IN HIS HAND A MAGICAL SPECULUM, MUCH GONE TO RUST, INDEED, YET IN FRAGMENTS STILL CLEAR; WHEREIN THE MARVELLOUS IMAGE OF HIS EXISTENCE DOES STILL SHADOW ITSELF, THOUGH FITFULLY, AND AS WITH AN INTERMITTENT LIGHT.

Carlyle — *Past and Present*.

FEW mediæval documents have exercised a greater fascination over men's minds in these latter days than "The Chronicle of Jocelin of Brakelond." More than sixty years ago the publication of the Latin text of this history, by the Camden Society, attracted the attention of the great Thomas Carlyle, and furnished him with material for sketching his picture of "The Ancient Monk," which occupied the entire second book of his *Past and Present*. Although the modern sage in his own rugged way affected no little contempt for what he called this "extremely foreign book," and for "the monk-Latin" in which it was written, it is evident that Jocelin's simple story of the wise, firm, yet withal gentle rule of a mediæval abbot over a great English monastery cast a spell over him, the influence of which can be detected in every page of his delightful and almost surprisingly sympathetic account of Abbot Samson and of Edmundsbury.

In this case the *Past*, as Carlyle read it in the "Chronicle," was so entirely different from the *Present*, as he knew it in his day, that the wonder is not that he was fascinated by it, but that he was able with its help to paint so true and living a

picture and to fashion so fitting a frame in which to set it. For to him, without doubt, the story dealt with what he regarded as “vanished existences”—“ideas, life-furniture, whole workings and ways,” which were not only *Past*, but gone beyond recall, and “covered deeper than Pompeii with the lava-ashes and inarticulate wreck of seven hundred years!”

And indeed it cannot be denied that the ideals and aspirations, as revealed to us in the history of Abbot Samson and, so far as we know, in the life story of his biographer Jocelin, are of a higher and almost a different order to those of our modern world. To men of their calling in those far-off times, the natural and the supernatural were united and intermingled in the simplest and most ordinary way. Their very notions of the unseen world are almost sufficient to take away the breath of those whose lots have been cast in this more material and prosaic age of doubts and disbeliefs. To Samson, and Jocelin, and their fellow-monks at Edmundsbury in the twelfth century, heaven, as a great writer has said of earlier English monasticism, was hardly even “next door.” The future life was merely the present continued, and each man went forth to his task as it came and laboured at it day by day, not with any idea of finishing it, but only of carrying on for the span of his allotted existence. They built, and planted, and wrote till the end came, and then they went to heaven and others stepped into their places and took up the common work. It was indeed a “simple life:” it was almost Arcadian in its picturesque simplicity, and, as Cardinal Newman says of the same life in the days of our Venerable Bede, it reminds us of those times in the dayspring of the world, when Adam delved and Abel watched the flocks, and Noah tended his vines, and angels visited them.

This living belief in the nearness and all-importance of the supernatural is the key-note of Jocelin’s charming story of a few brief years in the long history of an old English abbey, a new translation of which is here given to the public. As a story, however, Brakelond’s “Chronicle” is not wholly, nor indeed mostly, either mysterious or incredible: there are troubles, and trials, and difficulties enough recounted by the writer; and at every turn we may see evidences of human nature and even of human struggles and passions, which are sufficient, and as

some may perhaps think, more than sufficient, to show us that it is a history of men, and not of angels, which the old monk is setting forth so naturally and so truthfully. At any rate, there is quite sufficient of the human element in the narrative to give most of us a human interest in the story.

And this itself is proof that Jocelin is a true chronicler of what really took place, and no mere romancer tempted to edit or suppress entirely what might not be unto "edification." He manifests no desire to make himself or his brethren appear other than what they were in reality—that is, thorough Englishmen, with strong wills and human passions, which, though these same passions might occasionally appear to gain the mastery, they were at all times endeavouring to subdue unto God's service by the help of His grace and through the broad-minded provisions of St. Benedict's Rule. The actors who appear in this living drama, though they are for the most part monks, are obviously men, natural and human enough in all their works and words; but these men are at the same time also monks, endeavouring to raise their minds and hearts to supernatural ideals, and striving to attain to that personal communion with God which is the aim and object of all true religion and of all religious observance and practice. This is "another world truly," writes Carlyle, "and this present poor distressed world might get some profit by looking wisely into it, instead of foolishly. But at lowest, O dilettante friend, let us know always that it *was* a world, and not a void infinite of grey haze with phantasms swimming in it. These old St. Edmundsbury walls, I say, were not peopled with phantasms, but with men of flesh and blood, made altogether as we are. Had thou and I then been, who knows but we ourselves had taken refuge from an evil Time and fled to dwell here, and meditate on an Eternity, in such fashion as we could? Alas, how like an old osseous fragment, a broken blackened shinbone of the old dead Ages, this black ruin looks out, not yet covered by the soil; still indicating what a once gigantic Life lies buried there! It is dead now, and dumb; but was alive once and spake. For twenty generations, here was the earthly arena where painful living men worked out their life-wrestle,—looked at by Earth, by Heaven and Hell. Bells tolled to prayers; and men of many humours, various thoughts, chanted Vespers and Matins;—and round the little islet of their life rolled for ever (as

round ours still rolls, though we are blind and deaf) the illimitable Ocean, tinting all things with *its* eternal hues and reflexes, making strange prophetic music! How silent now!"

The Author.—Jocelin de Brakelond, the writer of the Chronicle called by his name, was a monk of Edmundsbury. The date of his birth is uncertain, but as he became a novice in that abbey in 1173, we may suppose that he was born not later than 1156. It has been conjectured that he was a native of Bury St. Edmunds, and that his name Brakelond was derived from that of an ancient street of the city, in accordance with the common practice of calling monks by the name of the place from which they came to religion. Little more is known about him than he tells us incidentally in the course of his narrative, but one of his contemporaries in the monastery speaks of him as "a man of excellent religious observance, as well as a power both in word and work"—*eximiae religionis, potens sermone et opere*. Carlyle sees him in his writing as a man of a "patient, peaceable, loving, clear-smiling nature." A "wise simplicity," he adds, "is in him; much natural sense; a veracity that goes deeper than words." What more can we desire in a writer, especially when we may add that he shows himself to have been a cultured man, acquainted with the ancient authors, quoting Virgil and Horace and Ovid? His knowledge of the Bible is naturally extensive, and, as was common in those days, his very phraseology is obviously founded upon the sacred text. He once likewise cites, with acknowledgment, a short passage from the more modern Ralph de Diceto's *Imagines Historiarum*. Our latter-day philosopher praises him also because he shows himself to have "a pleasant wit; and to love a timely joke, though in a mild subdued manner; very amiable to see."

In A.D. 1173, as just noted, Jocelin entered the community and passed under the care of Samson of Tottington, who subsequently became abbot, but who was then Master of novices. The then abbot, Hugh, was old, and although a high standard of the religious exercises and of the monastic life inside the cloister was maintained, the temporalities were in a sad state, and year by year tended to get from bad to worse, so that Jocelin's early experiences of monastic life

were connected with anxieties about the load of debt to money-lenders under which Edmundsbury groaned.

He tells us that he had himself seen bonds for repayment made out to the Jews, under which, for failure to meet the sums falling due, the original loan had grown in eight years from £100 to £800. No wonder that the youthful religious questioned his Master of novices as to why some remedy was not found by those in authority for a state of things which meant temporal ruin and disgrace for the community of Edmundsbury.

In 1180 Abbot Hugh met with an accident and died. After a period of a year and three months the former Master of novices, Samson, then the provident Sacrist, was chosen in his place. It was during this period of vacancy that, in recording something which happened in the monastery, Jocelin incidentally makes mention of another literary work of his own, namely, the *Book of the Miracles of St. Robert*, a boy supposed to have been martyred by the Jews in 1181, who was entombed in the church at Edmundsbury.

On the election of Samson, Jocelin was appointed his chaplain, and this brought him into the closest connection with the abbot for six years. In 1198 and 1200 he was Guest-master, and in 1212 he held the office of Almoner. In all these offices the future chronicler had exceptional means of acquiring information, and these he utilised in writing the story of Abbot Samson's administration, which is introduced by a vivid sketch of the temporal disorder of the house in the closing years of Abbot Hugh. His Chronicle covers the period of the history of Edmundsbury from 1173 to 1190, and, as he says in the beginning, "he took care to write only what he himself saw and heard." The date of his death is uncertain.

The "Chronicle."—The Latin text of *Cronica Joceline* is found complete only in one manuscript—Harl. MS. 1005—in the British Museum. It was printed for the first time by the Camden Society in 1840 under the editorship of I. G. Gage Rokewood, who supplied a valuable Introduction and notes, of which subsequent editors have availed themselves. The text was likewise printed in

Mr. Thomas Arnold's *Memorials of St. Edmund's Abbey* (Rolls Series) I., pp. 209–336.

In 1844, under the title *Monastic and Social Life in the Twelfth Century, as exemplified in the Chronicle of Jocelin of Brakelond, A.D. 1173–1202*, the work was translated by Thomas Edlyne Tomlins. Carlyle's work, *Past and Present*, published in 1843 had already drawn attention to the "Chronicle of Jocelin," and another edition of Mr. Tomlins' work was called for in 1849. This translation has since appeared at least once, but for the present edition a new English version has been carefully prepared from the original Latin text of the Chronicle.

Abbot Samson.—The central figure and, as we may say, "the hero" of Jocelin's story is, of course, Abbot Samson. He was born in 1135 at Tottington, near Thetford, in Norfolk. His father appears to have died when Samson was young, and a pretty legend of a boyish dream in which St. Edmund extended his protection to the child against the assaults of the devil, and the recognition of the place seen in the dream as the gate of the monastery of St. Edmundsbury, when his mother had taken him with her on a pilgrimage to the shrine of the saint, led to his taking refuge in the cloister. He had received his early instruction from a schoolmaster named William of Diss, and he attained the degree of Master of Arts in the University of Paris. In this place we are not concerned with the events of his life: these may be read for the most part in the Chronicle of Jocelin of Brakelond. What alone seems to be called for in this brief Introduction is some account of his person and character as it is manifested in the scattered evidences of his acts.

If we want a picture of the man let us take Carlyle's, who sketches "the substantial figure of a man with eminent nose, bushy brows, and clear-flashing eyes, his russet beard growing daily greyer," and his hair which, before his elevation to the abbot's chair, had been black, becoming daily more and more silvered with his many cares. We know something of the task that was before him when he gathered up the reins of office, and we may be sure he knew more. But as we see him in the pages of Jocelin, he was not the man to flinch from his duty, or to seek to let difficulties mend themselves by pretending that he did not see them.

From the time that he walked barefooted into his church to be installed in the abbatial chair, he let all see that he was abbot and had come to rule. He had set his whole strength to accomplish a great task and his shoulders to sustain an almost overwhelming burden, when in the hour of his election he walked to the altar singing the *Miserere mei* with his brethren. "His head was held erect," says the faithful Jocelin, "and his face showed no change," a portent which called from the king the remark: "This abbot-elect seems to think himself capable of governing an abbey."

"It is beautiful"—writes Carlyle in a philosophical appreciation of the principles of monastic government—"it is beautiful how the chrysalis governing-soul, shaking off its dusty slough and prison, starts forth winged, a true royal soul! Our new abbot has a right honest, unconscious feeling, without insolence as without fear or flutter, of what he is and what others are. A courage to quell the proudest, an honest pity to encourage the humblest. Withal there is a noble reticence in this Lord Abbot: much vain unreason he hears; lays up without response. He is not there to expect reason and nobleness of others, he is there to give them of his own reason and nobleness. Is he not their servant, who can suffer from them and for them; bear the burden their poor spindle-limbs totter and stagger under; and in virtue of *being* their servant, govern them, lead them out of weakness to strength, out of defeat into victory?"

Abbot Samson ruled over his house for thirty years, and when in 1212, ten years after the end of Jocelin's Chronicle, he died, he was followed to the grave by a sorrowing community whose unstinted reverence and affection he had won. An unknown monk of Edmundsbury, the author of another Chronicle of the house, thus wrote of him: "On the 30th December, at St. Edmund's, died Samson, of pious memory, the venerable abbot of that place; after he had prosperously ruled the abbey committed to him for thirty years and had freed it from a load of debt, had enriched it with privileges, liberties, possessions and spacious buildings and had restored the worship of the church both internally and externally, in the most ample manner. Then bidding his last farewell to his sons, by whom the blessed man deserved to be blest for evermore, whilst

they were all standing by and gazing with awe at a death which was a cause for admiration, not for regret, in the fourth year of the interdict he rested in peace.

The first business to which Abbot Samson applied himself after his election was the task of understanding and grappling with the deplorable financial state of his house. He insisted upon the immediate production of every claim against the monastery, and by personally visiting each of its many manors he gained a correct knowledge of its resources. Within twelve months he had formed his plans and had quieted every creditor: within twelve years the entire debt had been paid off, and he could turn his attention to building and adorning the house of St. Edmund. It is impossible to read the pages of Jocelin without seeing that the ruling idea of the abbot's life was his devotion to his great patron, St. Edmund. He was the servant, after God, of the saint, his representative and the upholder of his honour and privileges, the champion of his rights, the guardian of his property. Inspired by this thought he worked to make Edmundsbury worthy of its patron, and in his success he saw the result of the saint's intercession and protection.

"Apart from this special devotion to St. Edmund, it is easy to see," writes Mr. Thomas Arnold, "that Samson was an earnestly religious man, and not a Christian by halves. After the news had come of the capture of Jerusalem by the Saracens, Samson took the loss of the Holy Places so much to heart, that from that time he wore undergarments of hair-cloth and abstained from the use of meat."

He was, too, a thorough Englishman, and read admirably—*elegantissime*—the Bible in English—*scripturam anglice scriptam*—and "he was wont to preach to the people in English—but in the dialect of Norfolk where he had been born and bred." On one occasion he gives as a reason, and as some may think, a somewhat strange reason, for appointing a monk to an office, that "he did not know French." He was no doubt anxious to secure that St. Edmundsbury should be truly national, with its roots deep in the soil of his country, to teach it to build up its own traditions, and to let people see that it was a great *English* house.

But Samson's work was not accomplished without grave anxiety, none the less because it was unseen by others. Though he walked upright with a smiling face, and had ever the courage to battle for the rights of his house when there was need, in a way that might make people regard him as a man of iron nerve possessed of a soul that never felt any trouble, nevertheless in the first fourteen years of his administration his black hair was blanched as white as snow, and Jocelin speaks of hearing his beloved master walking about when all were in bed and relieving his pent-up feelings with sighs and groans. Once the chronicler took courage to tell his master that he had thus heard him in his night vigil, and to this the abbot replied: "Tis no wonder: you (as my chaplain) share in the streets of my office, in the meat and drink, in the journeys and the like, but you little think what I have to do to provide for my house and family, or of the many and difficult matters of my pastoral office, which are always pressing upon me: these are the things which make my soul anxious and cause me to sigh."

And so when Abbot Samson came to die, the thin veil which to him and his monks of Edmundsbury alone hid the world to come from their vision was parted, and the supernatural life eternal was revealed to him in the most natural of ways. He passed from labour for God and St. Edmundsbury, to rest in God and with his loved patron, carrying with him the full sheaves of his good works. Carlyle has only partially caught the idea when he writes: "Genuine work alone, what thou workest faithfully, that is eternal." "Yes," he concludes, "a noble Abbot Samson resigns himself to oblivion; feels it no hardship, but a comfort; counts it as a still resting-place, for much sick fret, and fever, and stupidity, which in the night-watches often made his strong heart sigh."

FRANCIS AIDAN GASQUET,
Abbot-President of the English Benedictines.

QUOD vidi et audiui scribere curavi, quædam mala interserens ad cautelam, quædam bona ad usum, quæ contigerunt in ecclesia sancti Ædmundi in diebus nostris, ab anno quo Flandrenses capti sunt extra villam, quo habitum religionis suscepì, quo anno Hugo prior depositus est, et R. prior substitutus.

*How Abbot Hugh ruled the
Church of St. Edmund.
A.D. 1173.*

Tunc temporis senuit Hugo abbas, et aliquantulum caligaverunt oculi ejus; homo pius et benignus, monachus religiosus et bonus, sed nec bonus nec providus in sæcularibus exercitiis: qui nimis confidebat suis et nimis eis credebat, de alieno potius quam de proprio pendens consilio. Ordo quidem et religio

IHAVE undertaken to write of those things which I have seen and heard, and which have occurred in the church of Saint Edmund, from the year in which the Flemings were taken¹ without the town, in which year also I assumed the religious habit, and in which Prior Hugh was deposed and Robert made Prior in his room. And I have related the evil as a warning, and the good for an example.

In those days Abbot Hugh² grew old, and his eyes were dim.³ He was a good and kindly man, a godfearing and pious monk, but in temporal matters he was unskilful and improvident. He relied too much on his own intimates and believed too readily in them, rather trusting to a stranger's advice than using his own judgment. It is true that discipline and the service of God, and all that pertained to the rule,

¹The allusion is to the battle of Fornham, November, 1173. In this year the quarrel between Henry II. and his sons, culminated in a general rising both in Normandy and in England. Of the leaders of the rebellion in England, Robert de Bellemont, earl of Leicester, was the chief. Having gathered a force of mercenaries in the Low Countries, he landed at Walton, which he failed to take. After joining hands with Hugh Bigod, earl of Norfolk, at Framingham, and capturing Haughley, he attempted to force his way to his own estates. Meanwhile, the justiciar Richard de Lucy and Humphrey Bohun hastened south from their campaign against the Scots, and having been reinforced by the local levies, they succeeded in intercepting Leicester at Fornham St. Geneveve, on the river Lark, four miles south from Bury St. Edmund's. The rebels were easily defeated, and Leicester taken prisoner; of his mercenaries only a few escaped. An account of the battle, not very accurate, from the point of view of the St. Edmund's monks, is to be found in Appendix E of the first volume of the *Memorials of St. Edmund's Abbey*, (Rolls Series). The escape of those mercenaries who did escape is attributed to the intervention of St. Edmund and St. Thomas.

fervebant in claustro, et ea quæ ad ordinem spectant; sed exteriora male tractabantur, dum quisque, serviens sub domino simplice et jam senescente, fecit quod voluit, non quod decuit. Dabantur villæ abbatis et omnes hundredi ad firmam; nemora destruebantur; domus maneriorum minabantur ruinam; omnia de die in diem in deteriorem statum vertebantur. Unicum erat refugium et consolationis remedium abbati, denarios appruntare; ut saltem sic honorem domus suæ posset sustentare. Non erat terminus Paschæ nec sancti Michaelis octo annis ante obitum ejus, quin centum libræ vel ducentæ ad minus crescerent in debitum; semper renovabantur cartæ, et usura quæ excrevit vertebatur in katallum.

Descendebat hæc infirmitas a capite in membra, a prælato in subjectos. Unde contigit quod quilibet obedientiarius haberet sigillum proprium, et debito se obligaret tam Judeis quam Christianis pro voluntate sua. Sæpe cappæ se-

flourished greatly within the cloister, but without the walls all-things were mismanaged. For every man, seeing that he served a simple and ageing lord, did not that which was right, but that which was pleasing in his own eyes. The townships and all the hundreds of the abbot were given to firm; the woods were destroyed, and the houses on the manors were on the verge of ruin; from day to day all things grew worse. The abbot's sole resource and means of relief was in borrowing money, that so it might at least be possible to maintain the dignity of his house. For eight years before his death, there was never an Easter or Michaelmas which did not see at least one or two hundred pounds added to the debt. The bonds were ever renewed, and the growing interest was converted into principal.

This disease spread from the head to the members, from the ruler to his subjects. So it came to pass that if any official had a seal of his own, he also bound himself in debt as he listed, both to Jews and Christians. Silken caps,

²Hugh, prior of Westminster, was elected abbot in 1157, in succession to abbot Ording. According to Gervase (I., 163), he received his benediction from Theobald, archbishop of Canterbury, to whom he made profession of canonical obedience. According to the *Chronica Buriensis* (*Mem.* III., 6) he was confirmed by the bishop of Winchester. In any case, abbot Hugh, as it related in the text of the *Chronicle of Jocelin* (p. 6), was freed from all obedience by pope Alexander III.

³Gen. xxvii., 1.

ricæ, et ampullæ aureæ, et alia ornamenta ecclesiæ impignorabantur, inconsulto conventu. Vidi cartam fieri Willelmo filio Isabel mille librarum et xl.; sed nec causam nec originem sciui. Vidi et aliam cartam fieri Isaac, filio Raby Joce, cccc. librarum, sed nescio quare. Vidi et tertiam cartam fieri Benedicto Judeo de Norwico, octies c. librarum et quater viginti; et hæc fuit origo et causa hujus debiti.

and golden vessels, and the other ornaments of the church, were often placed in pledge⁴ without the assent of the monastery. I have seen a bond made to William Fitzlsabel for a thousand and two score pounds, but know not the why nor wherefore. And I have seen another bond to Isaac, son of Rabbi Joce, for four hundred pounds, but know not wherefore it was made. I have seen also a third bond to Benedict, the Jew of Norwich, for eight hundred and fourscore pounds, and this was the origin and cause of that debt.

Destructa fuit camera nostra, et recepit eam Willelmus sacrista volens vel nolens, ut eam instauraret; et occulte appruntavit a Benedicto Judeo xl. marcas ad usuram, et ei fecit cartam signatam quodam sigillo quod solebat pendere ad feretrum sancti Ædmundi, unde gildæ et fraternationes solebant sigillari, quod postea sed tarde fractum est, jubente conventu. Cum autem crevisset debitum illud usque ad c. libras, venit Judeus portans literas domini regis de debito sacristæ; et tunc demum patuit quod latuit abbatem et

Our buttery was destroyed, and the sacristan William⁵ received it to restore whether he would or no. He secretly borrowed forty marks at interest from Benedict the Jew, and made him a bond, scaled with a certain seal which was wont to hang at the shrine of St. Edmund. With this the gilds and brotherhoods used to be sealed; afterwards, but in no great haste, it was destroyed by order of the monastery. Now when that debt increased to one hundred pounds, the Jew came, bearing letters of the lord king⁶ concern-

⁴This was illegal. Rokewode (*Chron. Joc.*, pp. 106–7) gives instances of fines inflicted on Jews for taking church property in pawn, from the Pipe Rolls of Norfolk and Suffolk.

⁵William Wardell (*Mem. II.*, 291). His incompetence is mentioned in the *Gesta Sacristurum* (*ibid.*), and is described in the text.

⁶The Jews were legally the king's chattels, and debts due to them were due to the king. Accordingly, when debtors failed to pay, the Jews were able to invoke the royal authority to enforce payment.

conventum. Iratus autem abbas voluit deponere sacristam, prætendens privilegium domini papæ, ut posset deponere Willelmum sacristam suum, quando vellet. Venit autem aliquis ad abbatem, et, loquens pro sacrista, ita circumvenit abbatem, quod passus est cartam fieri Benedicto Judeo cccc. librarum, reddendarum in fine iiiij^{or} annorum, scilicet pro c. libris quæ jam excreverant in usuram, et aliis c. libris quas idem Judeus commodavit sacristæ ad opus abbatis. Et sacrista suscepit omne debitum illud reddendum in pleno capitulo, et facta est carta sigillo conventus signata, abbate dissimulante et sigillum suum non apponente, tanquam illud debitum non pertineret ad illum. In fine vero quatuor annorum non erat unde illud debitum posset reddi; et facta est nova carta octies c. librarum et quater viginti librarum, reddendarum ad terminos statutos, annis singulis quater xx. librarum.

Habuit et idem Judeus plures alias cartas de minoribus debitis, et aliquam cartam quæ erat xiiij. annorum, ita quod summa debiti illius Judei erat

ning the sacristan's debt, and then at last that which had been hidden from the abbot and the monks appeared. So the abbot in anger would have deposed the sacristan, alleging a privilege of the lord pope that enabled him to remove William his sacristan when he would. However, there came one to the abbot, who pleaded for the sacristan, and so won over the abbot that he suffered a bond to be made to Benedict the Jew for four hundred pounds, payable at the end of four years, that is, a bond for the hundred pounds to which the interest had increased, and for another hundred pounds which the same Jew had lent to the sacristan for the use of the abbot. And in full chapter the sacristan obtained that all this debt should be paid, and a bond was made and sealed with the seal of the monastery. For the abbot pretended that the debt was no concern of his, and did not affix his seal. However, at the end of the four years there was nothing wherewith the debt might be discharged, and a new bond was made for eight hundred and fourscore pounds, which was to be repaid at stated times, every year fourscore pounds.

And the same Jew had many other bonds for smaller debts, and one bond which was for fourteen years, so that the sum of the debt owing to that

mille et cc. librarum, præter usuram quæ excreverat.

Veniensque R. elemosinarius domini regis significavit domino abbati rumorem talem venisse ad regem de tantis debitis. Et inito consilio cum priore et paucis aliis, ductus est elemosinarius in capitulum; nobisque assidentibus et tacentibus, dixit abbas: "Ecce elemosinarius regis, dominus et amicus noster et vester, qui, ductus amore Dei et sancti Ædmundi, nobis ostendit dominum regem quoddam sinistrum audisse de nobis et vobis, et res ecclesiæ male tractari et interius et exterius. Et ideo volo et præcipio in vi obedientiæ, ut dicatis et cognoscatis palam qualiter res se habeant." Surgens ergo prior et loquens, quasi unus pro omnibus, dixit ecclesiam in bono statu esse, et ordinem bene et religiose observari interius, et exteriora bene et discrete tractari, debito tamen aliquantulo obligatos nos esse sicut cæteros vicinos nostros, nec esse aliquod debitum quod nos graveret. Audiens hoc, elemosinarius dixit se valde lætum esse ex hoc quod audierat testimonium conventus, id est, prioris sic loquentis. Hæc eadem verba respondit prior alia vice, et magister Galfridus de Constantino, loquentes et excusantes abbatem, quando Ricardus archiepiscopus jure legatæ ve-

Jew was a thousand and two hundred pounds, over and above the amount by which usury had increased it.

Then came the almoner of the lord king and told the lord abbot that many rumours concerning these great debts had come to the king. And when counsel had been taken with the prior and a few others, the almoner was brought into the chapter. Then, when we were seated and were silent, the abbot said: "Behold the almoner of the king, our lord and friend and yours, who, moved by love of God and Saint Edmund, has shown to us that the lord king has heard some evil report of us and you, and that the affairs of the church are ill-managed within and without the walls. And therefore I will, and command you upon your vow of obedience, that you say and make known openly how our affairs stand." So the prior arose, and speaking as it were one for all, said that the church was in good order, and that the rule was well and strictly kept within, and matters outside the walls carefully and discreetly managed; and that though we, like others round us, were slightly involved in debt, there was no debt which might give us cause for anxiety. When he heard this, the almoner said that he rejoiced greatly to hear this witness of the monastery, by which he meant these words of

nit in capitulum nostrum, antequam talem exemptionem haberemus sicut nunc habemus.

the prior. And the prior, and Master Geoffrey of Coutances, answered in these same words on another occasion, when they spoke in defence of the abbot at the time when Archbishop Richard, by virtue of his legatine power, came into our chapter, in the days before we possessed that exemption which we now enjoy.

Ego vero tunc temporis novicius, data opportunitate, magistrum meum super his conveni, qui me docebat ordinem et cuius custodiæ deputatus fui, scilicet, magistrum Sampsonem, postea abbatem. “Quid est,” inquam, “quod audio? Utquid taces qui talia vides et audis, tu qui claustralis es, nec obedientias cupis, et Deum times magis quam hominem?” At ille respondens, ait: “Fili mi, puer noviter combustus timet ignem; ita est de me et pluribus aliis. Hugo prior noviter depositus est de prioratu suo, et in exilium missus; Dionisius et H. et R. de Hingham de exilio nuper domum redierunt. Ego similiter incarceratus fui, et postea apud Acram missus, quia locuti sumus pro communi bono ecclesiæ nostræ contra voluntatem abbatis. Hæc est hora tenebrarum; hæc

Now I was then in my novitiate, and on a convenient occasion talked of these things to my master, who was teaching me the Rule, and in whose care I was placed; he was Master Samson, who was afterwards abbot. “What is this,” I said, “that I hear? And why do you keep silence when you see and hear such things you, who are a cloistered monk, and desire not offices, and fear God rather than man?” But he answered and said, “My son, the newly burnt child feareth the fire, and so is it with me and with many another. Prior Hugh has been lately deposed and sent into exile; Dennis, and Hugo, and Roger de Hingham have but lately returned to the house from exile. I was in like manner imprisoned,⁷ and afterwards was sent to Acre,⁸ for that we spoke to the common good of our church

⁷ Arnold (*Mem.*, I., xlv., note 3; 212), gives reasons for supposing that this alludes to a second imprisonment of Samson, distinct from that which he suffered on his return from Rome (see text, p. 77). The passage would appear to refer to a recent event, which the imprisonment after his Roman journey was not.

est hora qua adulatorum dominantur et eis creditur: confortata est potentia eorum, nec possumus ad eam. Dissimulanda sunt ista pro tempore: videat Dominus et iudicet."

*How the monastery was
freed from legatine
visitation.
A.D. 1176.*

Cantuariensis vellet venire ad scrutinium faciendum in ecclesia nostra, auctoritate legatiae suae; et, accepto consilio, misit abbas Romam et impetravit exemptionem a potestate praedicti legati. Redeunte nuntio ad nos de Roma, non erat unde solvi poterat quod ipse promiserat domino papae et cardinalibus, nisi, ex circumstantiis, crux quae erat super magnum altare, et Mariola, et Johannes, quas imagines Stigandus archiepiscopus magno pondere auri et argenti ornaverant, et

Venit rumor ad abbatem H. quod R. archiepiscopus

ch against the will of the abbot. This is the hour of darkness; this is the hour in the which flatterers triumph and are believed; their might is increased,⁹ nor can we prevail against them. These things must be endured for a while; the Lord see and judge!"¹⁰

There came a rumour to Abbot Hugh that Richard, Archbishop of Canterbury,¹¹ purposed to come and to hold a visitation of our church by virtue of his legatine authority. And having taken advice, the abbot sent to Rome and obtained exemption from the power of the said legate. But when the messenger returned to us from Rome, there was not found means of paying that which he had promised to the lord pope and to the cardinals, unless in the circumstances use might be made of the cross which was above the high altar, and of a Mary, and a John, which images Archbishop Stigand had adorned with much weight

⁸In all probability this means Castle Acre, where was a famous Cluniac priory, founded by William de Warenne, as a cell to St. Pancras, Lewes. Acre, however, might mean either Castle Acre or West Acre, at both of which places were priories.

⁹Ps. cxxxviii., 6 (Vulgate).

¹⁰Ex. v., 21.

¹¹Richard of Dover, a Norman, prior of Dover, was archbishop from 1173 to 1184. He was elected at the end of the three years vacancy which followed on the murder of Becket (Gervase, I., 244). As to the question of the legatine authority over the abbey, Rokewode (p. 107-8) collects details. He points out that abbot Hugh appears to have obtained first a special exemption from Alexander III. from all authority other than that of the pope or a legate *a latere*; and afterwards a further exemption from the authority of archbishop Richard.

sancto Ædmondo dederat. Dixerunt etiam quidam ex nostris qui abbatem familiarius diligebant, quod ipsum feretrum sancti Ædmondi deberet excrustari propter talem libertatem, non advertentes magnum periculum posse nasci de tali libertate; quod, si forte fuerit aliquis abbas noster qui res ecclesiæ voluerit dilapidare et conventum suum male tractare, non erit persona cui conventus possit conqueri de injuriis abbatis, qui nec episcopum, nec archiepiscopum, nec legatum timebit, et impunitas ausum præbebit delinquendi.

*Concerning Master Dennis
the cellarer.*

In diebus illis celerarius, sicut ceteri officiales, appruntavit denarios a Jurneto Judeo, inconsulto conventu, super cartam supradicto sigillo signatam. Cum autem excrevit[†] debitum usque ad sexaginta libras, summonitus est conventus ad solvendum debitum celerarii. Depositus est celerarius; licet allegaret gravamen suum, dicens quod susceperat tribus annis hospites omnes in domo hospitum ad præceptum abbatis sive abbas fuerit præsens sive

of gold and silver, and had given to the blessed Edmund. Then some among our number, who were very intimate with the abbot, said that the very shrine of Saint Edmund itself ought to be stripped in order to win so notable a privilege. But they considered not the great danger that might ensue from so great liberty. For if by chance we should have an abbot who wished to waste the goods of the church and evilly entreat his monastery, then there would be no one to whom the monastery might make complaint of the evil deeds of the abbot, who would fear neither bishop, nor archbishop, nor legate, and whose impunity would give him boldness in wrongdoing.

Now in those days the cellarer, like the rest of the officers of the monastery, borrowed money from Jurnet the Jew, without the knowledge of the monastery, on a bond sealed with the seal mentioned above. But when the debt had grown to three score pounds, the monastery was called upon to discharge the debt of the cellarer. He was deposed, though he defended himself by saying that for three years he, by command of the abbot, had received all guests in the guesthouse, whether the abbot were at home or no, whom the

[†] Excrevisset.

absens, quos debeat suscipere abbas secundum consuetudinem abbatiae.

Substitutus est magister Dionisius, qui per providentiam suam et cautelam minoravit debitum lx. librarum usque ad xxx. libras; de quo debito reddidimus xxx^{ia} marcas, quas Benedictus de Blakeham dedit conventui pro maneriis Neutone et Wepstede tenendis: sed carta Judei usque hodie remansit apud Judeum, in qua continentur xxvi. libræ de katallo et de debito celerarii.

Tertio die postquam magister Dionisius fuit celerarius, ducti sunt tres milites cum armigeris suis usque in domum hospitum, ut ibi reficerentur, abbate domi existente et in thalamo suo residente. Quod cum audisset magnanimus ille Æacides, nolens pendere in bailiva sua,[†] sicut ceteri, surrexit et accepit claves cellarii, et ducens secum milites illos usque in aulam abbatis, veniensque ad abbatem, dixit: "Domine, bene novistis quod consuetudo abbatiae est, ut milites et laici recipiantur in curia vestra, si abbas domi fuerit; nec volo nec possum recipere hospites qui ad vos pertinent. Alioquin, accipite claves cellarii vestri, et alium constituite celerarium pro beneplacito

abbot ought to have received according to the constitution of the house.

In his stead Master Dennis was appointed, and by his economy and care reduced that debt of sixty pounds to thirty. Towards the extinction of that debt we paid the thirty marks which Benedict de Blakeham gave to the monastery for the manors of Newton and Wepstead. But the Jew's bond remains with the Jew to this day, and in it twenty-six pounds are written down as principal and for the debt of the cellarer.

On the third day after Master Dennis was made cellarer, three knights with their squires were brought into the guesthouse to be entertained there, the abbot being at home and sitting in his chamber. Now when that greathearted Achilles heard this, not wishing to fail in his office as did the others, he arose and took the keys of the cellar, and bearing the knights with him to the hall of the abbot, came himself into the abbot's presence. And he said to him, "Lord, you know well that the custom of the abbey is that knights and laymen be received in your hall, if the abbot be at home. I neither wish, nor am I able, to receive guests whose entertainment is your care. But if it be

[†]The owner of a bailiwick makes other people pay toll who enter it, but does not pay himself.

vestro.” Audiens hoc abbas, volens vel nolens recepit illos milites, et semper postea milites et laicos recepit secundum antiquam consuetudinem; et adhuc recipiuntur, abbate domi existente.

How Abbot Hugh strove to win the favour of Master Samson.

Volens aliquando abbas Hugo magistrum Sampsonem conciliare sibi in gratiam, subsacristam eum constituit; qui sæpius accusatus, sæpius de officio in officium est translatus; quandoque factus est magister hospitum, quandoque pitentarius, quandoque tertius prior, et iterum subsacrista; et multi ei adversabantur qui postea ei adulabantur. Ille vero aliter agens quam ceteri officiales, nunquam ad adulandum flecti potuit; unde dicebat abbas suis familiaribus, se nunquam vidisse talem hominem, quem non posset converti ad suam voluntatem, præter Sampsonem subsacristam.

otherwise, take the keys of your cellar, and appoint another cellarer at your pleasure.” When the abbot heard this, he received those knights perforce and ever after he received knights and laymen in accordance with ancient custom. And they are still so received when the abbot is at home.

At one time Abbot Hugh desired to win the favour of Master Samson, and made him his subsacristan. He was often accused, often transferred from one office to another. For he was made guest-master, and then pittance-master,¹² then third prior and finally again subsacristan. Then many strove against him who afterwards were his flatterers. But Samson did not bear himself as did the other officials, nor could he ever be brought to flatter. Wherefore the abbot said to his intimates that never had he seen a man whom he could not bend to his will, save Samson the subsacristan.

¹²The official of the monastery who had charge of the distribution of the pittances to the monks, that is, additional allowances of food or drink, the result of some benefaction.

*How Abbot Hugh came by
his death.*

A.D. 1180 Sep. 9.

Venit abbat
ti Hugoni in
mentem, an-
no vicesimo
tertio abbatiae suae, adire sanctum
Thomam orandi gratia; arreptoque in
itinere, in crastino nativitatis sanctae
Mariæ prope Roucestriam miserabi-
liter cecidit, ita quod patella tibiae de
proprio loco exivit et resedit in poplite.
Occurrerunt medici, et eum multis
modis cruciabant, sed non sanabant.
Reportatus est ad nos in feretro equi-
tario, et devote susceptus, sicut decuit.
Quid multa? conputruit crux[†] ejus,
et ascendit dolor usque ad cor, et ex
dolore arripuit eum febris tertiana, et
in quarta accessione expiravit; et ani-
mam reddidit Deo in crastino sancti
Bricii.

Antequam mortuus esset, distracta
fuerunt omnia a servientibus suis,
ita quod nichil omnino in domibus
abbatis remanserat, nisi tripodes et
mensae quae asportari non poterant.
Vix abbati remanserant coopertorium
suum et duae stragulae quae veteres
erant et fractae, quas aliquis apposue-
rat qui integras abstulerat. Non erat
aliquid ad pretium unius denarii quod
possit distribui pauperibus pro anima

In the twenty-third year of his being
abbot,¹³ it came into the mind of Ab-
bot Hugh to journey to the shrine
of the blessed Thomas to pray there.
And when he was almost at his
journey's end, and was near unto Ro-
chester on the morrow of the Nativity
of the Blessed Mary, he most unhap-
pily fell, so that his knee-pan was put
out and lodged in the ham of his leg.
Physicians hastened to him, and put
him to pain in many ways, but they
healed him not. So he was borne back
to us in a horse-litter, and received
with great concern, as was fitting. To
put it shortly, his leg mortified and
the sickness spread to his heart. Pain
brought on a tertian fever, and in the
fourth fit he died, rendering his soul
to God on the morrow of Saint Brice's
day.

Ere he was dead, all things were th-
rown into disorder by his servants,
so that in the abbot's houses there
was nothing at all left, except stools
and tables which could not be car-
ried away. There hardly remained to
the abbot a coverlet and quilts which
were old and torn, and which someo-
ne who had taken away those which
were sound, had left in their place.
There was not even some thing of a

¹³There is an account of this event in the *Chronica Buriensis* (Mem. III., 6).

[†]lege *crus*, Roke.

ejus. Sacrista dicit non pertinere ad eum ut hoc faceret, dicens se expensas abbati et familiæ suæ invenisse per mensem integrum; quia nec firmarii, qui villas tenebant, volebant aliquid dare ante tempus constitutum, nec creditores volebant aliquid commodare, videntes eum infirmum usque ad mortem. Quinquaginta tamen solidos invenit firmarius de Palegrava ad distribuendum pauperibus; hac ratione, quia firmam de Palegrava intravit illa die. Sed illi quinquaginta solidi erant postea redditu iterum bailivis regis, firmam integram exigentibus ad opus regis.

penny's value which might be given to the poor for the good of his soul. The sacristan said that it was not his affair to do this, declaring that he had found the money for the expenses of the abbot and his household for a full month, since neither would those who farmed the townships pay anything before the appointed time, nor would the creditors give any grace, as they saw the abbot to be sick unto death. However the tenant of Palegrave found fifty shillings for distribution to the poor, because he entered upon his tenancy of Palegrave on that day. But those fifty shillings were afterwards again paid to the king's officers, who exacted the full rent for the use of the king.

How the death of Abbot Hugh was told to the king, and of those things which the servants of the king did.

Sepulto abbate Hugone, decretum est in capitulo, ut aliquis nunciaret Ranulfo de Glanvill,[†] justiciario Angliæ, mortem abbatis. Magister Sampson et Magister R. Rufus, monachi nostri, cito transfretaverunt[‡] nunciantes hoc idem domino re-

Sepulto abbate Hugone, decretum est in capitulo, ut ali-

When Abbot Hugh had been laid to rest, it was decreed in the chapter that one should tell the death of the abbot to Ranulf de Glanvill,¹⁴ Justiciar of England. Master Samson and Master Robert Ruffus hastened across the sea, bearing this same news to the lord King, and obtained from him letters directing that the possessions

[†] Ranulf de Glanville, author of the famous treatise *De legibus et consuetudinibus regni Angliæ*, which explains the forms of procedure observed in the *curia regis*, took the cross in the last year of Henry II.'s reign, and died at the siege of Acre in 1190.

[‡] "King Henry II. kept Christmas at Le Mans." (Roke.)

¹⁴ Justiciar from 1180 to 1189. He was deprived at the accession of Richard, and died on the crusade at the siege of Acre (1190), whither he had preceded Richard I. The news of the vacancy was sent to the justiciar, owing to the absence of Henry II. in Maine.

gi, et impetraverunt literas, ut res et redditus conventus, qui separati sunt a rebus et redditibus abbatis, essent integræ in manu prioris et conventus, et reliqua pars abbatiae esset in manu regis. Data est custodia abbatiae Roberto de Cokefeld, et R. de Flamville senescallo, qui statim omnes famulos abbatis et parentes ejus, quibus abbas aliquid donaverat, postquam infirmus fuerat, vel qui aliquid de rebus abbatis abstulerant, posuerunt per vadium et plegios, et etiam capellanum abbatis, monachum nostrum, quem prior plegiavit; et intrantes vestiarium nostrum omnia ornamenta ecclesiae in chirographo subscribi fecerunt.[†]

How the prior ruled the monastery, while there was no abott.

Vacante abbacia, prior super omnia studuit ad pacem conservandam in conventu, et ad honorem ecclesiae conservandum in hospitibus suscipiendis, neminem volens

and revenues of the monastery, which were distinct from those of the abbot, should remain entirely in the hands of the prior and of the monastery, and that the rest of the abbey's property should be in the hands of the King. The wardship of the abbey¹⁵ was given to Robert de Cokefield and to Robert de Flamvill the seneschal, who at once placed under surety and pledges those of the servants and relatives of the abbot to whom the abbot had given anything after he fell ill, or who had taken anything from the property of the abbot. And they also treated the chaplain of the abbot in the same way, for whom the prior became surety. And entering our vestry, they made a double inventory of all the ornaments of the church.

There being no abbot, the prior¹⁶ took care, above all things, to preserve peace in the monastery and to maintain the repute of the house in the matter of receiving guests. He wished to disturb no one, to provoke no one to anger, that he might keep all men and all

¹⁵Rokewode (pp. 109–11) gives the accounts of the wardship from the Pipe Roll of Norfolk and Suffolk.

[†]The accounts of the wardens during the vacancy of the abbotship are still extant among the Pipe Rolls, and Mr. Rokewode has deduced from them that “the rental of the abbot of St. Edmund’s for year 1181, that is to say, from Mich. 1180 to Mich. 1181, according to the ancient assise, and exclusive of the sustenance of the monks, who had their own portion of lands, was 326l. 12s. 4d.”

¹⁶The prior was Robert, who was appointed on the deposition of prior Hugh (1173). He held office until his death, which took place about 1200 (see text, p. 194).

turbare, neminem ad iracundiam provocare, ut omnes et omnia in pace posset conservare; dissimulans tamen quædam corrigenda de obedientiariis nostris, et maxime de sacrista, tanquam non curaret quid ipse ageret de sacristia, qui, tempore quo abbatia vacavit, nec debitum aliquod adquietavit, nec aliquid ædificavit; sed oblationes et obventiones stulte distrahebantur. Unde prior, qui caput conventus erat, pluribus videbatur vituperandus, et remissus dicebatur. Et hoc memorabant fratres nostri inter se, quando perventum fuit ad faciendam electionem abbatis.

How the cellarer and the sacristan behaved during the vacancy.

ditionis essent, suscepit ad expensas conventus. Willelmus sacrista ex sua parte dabat et expendebat; homo benignus, dans danda et non danda, oculos omnium excæcans muneribus.

Concerning the conduct of Samson the subsacristan during the vacancy.

Samson subsacrista, magister super operarios, nichil fractum, nichil rimatum, nichil fissum, nichil inemendatum reliquit pro posse suo; unde conventum et

things in quiet. But he overlooked some acts of our officials which should have been corrected; and especially in the case of the sacristan, as if he cared not how that office was performed. Now the sacristan, while the abbey was vacant, neither paid any debt nor erected any building, but the offerings and accidental receipts were foolishly wasted. Wherefore the prior, who was head of the monastery, seemed to many to be blameworthy, and was called slack. And our brothers reminded each other of this when the time came for electing an abbot.

Our cellarer entertained all guests of whatever condition, at the expense of the monastery. William the sacristan, for his part gave and spent. Kind man! he spent indiscriminately, and blinded the eyes of all with gifts.¹⁷

Samson the subsacristan, who was master over the workmen, did his utmost that nothing which was broken, and no chink or crack, should remain unrepaired. In this way he won the favour of the monastery, and more especially of the cloistered monks. At that time,

¹⁷ Deut. xvi., 19.

maxime claustrales sibi conciliavit in gratiam. In diebus illis chorus noster fuit erectus, Samsone procurante, historias picturæ ordinante, et versus elegiacos dictante. Attractum fecit magnum de lapidibus et sabulo ad magnam turrin ecclesiæ construendam. Et interrogatus unde denarios haberet ad hoc faciendum, respondit quosdam burgenses dedisse ei occulte pecuniam ad turrin ædificandam et perficiendam. Dicebant tamen quidam fratres nostri, quod Warinus monachus noster, custos feretri, et Samson subsacrista communi consilio surripuerunt, quasi furtive, portionem aliquam de oblationibus feretri, ut eam in usus necessarios ecclesiæ, et nominatim ad ædificationem turris, expenderent; hac ratione ducti, quia videbant quod oblationes in usus extraordinarios expendebantur ab aliis, qui, ut verius dicam, eas furabantur. Et ut tam felicitis furti sui suspicionem tollerent prænominati duo viri, truncum quendam fecerunt, concavum, et perforatum in medio vel in summo, et obseratum sera ferrea; et erigi fecerunt in magna ecclesia, juxta ostium extra chorum in communi transitu vulgi, ut ibi ponerent homines elemosinam suam ad ædificationem turris.

and under Samson's direction, was our choir built. He determined the subjects, the paintings, and composed elegiac verses for them. He made a great store of stone and sand for building the great tower of the church.¹⁸ And when he was asked where he found the money for this work, he answered that some of the townsfolk had given him money secretly for the building and completing of the tower. But some of our brothers said that Warin our monk and custodian of the shrine, had agreed to take, or as it were to steal, some part of the offerings of the shrine, and to spend it for the necessary purposes of the church, especially for the building of the tower. They were led to this opinion by the fact that they saw the strange uses to which these offerings were put by others, who, to speak the truth, did steal them. And in order to remove from themselves the suspicion of so happy a theft, Samson and Warin made a hollow chest, in the middle of the cover of which there was a hole, and which was secured with an iron bar. This chest they caused to be placed in the great church near the door outside the choir, where all the people passed by, that men might

¹⁸The tower in the centre of the west front. It was begun probably either by abbot Baldwin (1065–97), or by abbot Robert I. (1100–02). It was blown down in 1210, before the death of Samson (*Ann. St. Edmund, Mem. II.*, 18).

*How the enemies of
Samson prevailed against
him, but only for a time.*

Willelmus vero sacrista socium suum Samsonem suspectum habuit, et multi alii qui partem ejusdem Willelmi fovebant, tam Christiani quam Judæi. Judei, inquam, quibus sacrista pater et patronus dicebatur; de cujus protectione gaudebant, et liberum ingressum et egressum habebant, et passim ibant per monasterium, vagantes per altaria et circa feretrum, dum missarum celebrarentur sollemnia: et denarii eorum in thesauro nostro sub custodia sacristæ reponebantur, et, quod absurdius est, uxores eorum cum parvis suis in pitancia nostra tempore werræ hospitabantur.

Accepto itaque consilio qualiter irruerent in Samsonem inimici vel adversarii ejus, convenerunt Robertum de Cokefeld et socium ejus, qui custodes erant abbatiæ, et induxerunt eos ad hoc, quod illi prohibuerant ex parte regis, ne aliquis aliquod opus vel aliquod ædificium faceret, quamdiu abbatia vacaret; sed potius denarii ex oblationibus colligerentur et conservarentur ad faciendam solutionem alicujus debiti.

place therein gifts for the building of the tower.

But William the sacristan mistrusted his colleague Samson, as did many others, both Christians and Jews, who favoured the opinion of the same William. The Jews, I say, to whom the sacristan was said to be a father and a patron. And they did rejoice in his protection, having freedom to enter and to leave the monastery, and wandering all over it. For they walked by the altars and round the shrine while high mass was being celebrated; their money was lodged in our treasury under the care of the sacristan; and, a thing still more foolish, their wives and little ones were entertained in our pittancy during time of war.

Therefore, having taken counsel together how they might attack Samson, his enemies and adversaries went to Robert de Cokefield and to his colleague, who had the wardship of the abbey, and persuaded them to forbid in the name of the king that any one should do any work or build anything while the abbacy was vacant, but rather should the money from he offerings be collected and saved for the payment of some part of the

Et sic illusus est Samson, et recessit ab eo fortitudo ejus; nec de cætero aliquid operari potuit, sicut voluit. Potuerunt quidem adversarii ejus rem differre, sed non auferre; quia resumptis viribus suis, et subversis duobus columnis, id est, remotis duobus custodibus abbatiæ quibus aliorum malitia innitebatur, dedit ei Dominus, processu temporis, potestatem perficiendi votum suum ut prædictam turrem ædificaret, et pro desiderio suo consummaret. Et factum est ac si ei divinitus diceretur: “Euge, serve bone et fidelis, quia super pauca fuisti fidelis, super multa, &c.”

*How the monks disputed
among themselves which of
them should be abbot.*

Vacante abbatiâ, sæpe, sicut decuit, rogavimus Dominum et sanctum martyrem Ædmondum, ut nobis et ecclesiæ nostræ congruum darent pastorem, singulis ebdomadibus ter cantantes vii. psalmos pœnitentiales prostrati in choro, post exitum in capitulo: et erant aliqui, quibus si constaret quis futurus

debt. Thus was Samson mocked, and his strength went from him,¹⁹ and he could not from that time do any work as he desired. But though his enemies could delay his work, they could not finally interrupt it. For he regained his strength and overthrew the two middle pillars,²⁰ that is, he removed the two wardens in whom the malice of the others trusted. And afterwards in course of time, the Lord gave him power to perform his vow that he would build the said tower, and to finish it according to his wish. And so it came to pass as though a voice from Heaven had said to him, “Well done, thou good and faithful servant;²¹ thou hast been faithful over a few things; I will make thee ruler over many things.”

The abbacy being vacant, we often, as was right, made supplication unto the Lord and to the blessed martyr Edmund that they would give us and our church a fit pastor. Three times in each week, after leaving the chapter, did we prostrate ourselves in the choir and sing seven penitential psalms. And there were some who would not have been so earnest in their prayers if they had known who was to become

¹⁹Jud. xvi., 17; xvi., 19.

²⁰Jud. xvi., 29.

²¹Matt. xxv., 21.

esset abbas, non ita devote orassent. De eligendo abbate, si rex nobis liberam concederet electionem, diversi diversis modis loquebantur, quidam publice, quidam occulte; et "quot homines tot sententiæ."[†]

Dixit quidam de quodam: "Ille, ille frater, bonus monachus est, probabilis persona; multum scit de ordine et consuetudinibus ecclesiæ: licet non sit tam perfectus philosophus sicut quidam alii, bene potest esse abbas. Abbas Ordingus[‡] homo illiteratus fuit, et tamen fuit bonus abbas et sapienter domum istam rexit: legitur etiam in fabulis, melius fuit ranis eligere truncum in regem, super quem confidere possent, quam serpentem, qui venenose sibilaret, et post sibilum subjectas devoraret." Respondit alter: "Quomodo potest hoc fieri? quomodo potest facere sermonem in capitulo, vel ad populum diebus festivis, homo qui literas non novit? quomodo habebit scientiam ligandi et solvendi, qui scripturas non intelligit? cum sit

abbot. As to the choice of an abbot, if the king should grant us free election, there was much difference of opinion, some of it openly expressed, some of it privately; and every man had his own ideas.

One said of a certain brother, "He, that brother, is a good monk, a likely person. He knows much of the rule and of the customs of the church. It is true that he is not so profoundly wise as are some others, but he is quite capable of being abbot. Abbot Ording²² was illiterate, and yet he was a good abbot and ruled this house wisely; and one reads in the fable that the frogs did better to elect a log to be their king than a serpent, who hissed venomously, and when he had hissed, devoured his subjects." Another answered, "How could this thing be? How could one who does not know letters preach in the chapter, or to the people on feast days? How could one who does not know the scriptures have the knowledge of binding and loosing?"²³ For the ru-

[†] Ter. Phorm. 2, 3, 14.

[‡] This was the abbot to whom Geoffrey de Fontibus addressed his work "De Infantia S. Eadm."; see above, p. 93.

²² Ording de Stowe was elected in 1138, when abbot Anselm was elected to the bishopric of London. Anselm was driven from his see soon afterwards on the ground that the election had taken place without the assent of the dean of London, and resumed his abbacy. On his death in 1148, Ording was again elected, and held the abbacy to his death in 1156. (*Chron. Bur., Mem. III.*, 5-6.)

²³ Cp. Matt. xvi., 19.

ars artium, scientia scientiarum, regimen animarum. Absit ut statua muta erigatur in ecclesia sancti Ædmundi, ubi multi literati viri et industrii esse dinoscuntur.”

Item dixit alius de alio: “Ille frater vir literatus est, eloquens et providus; rigidus in ordine; multum dilexit conventum, et multa mala pertulit pro bonis ecclesiæ: dignus est ut fiat abbas.” Respondit alter: “A bonis clericis libera nos, Domine: ut a baratoribus de Norfolchia nos conservare digneris, te rogamus audi nos.”[†]

Item dixit quidam de quodam: “Ille frater bonus husebondus est: quod probatur ex warda sua, et ex obedientiis quas bene servavit, et ædificiis et emendationibus quas fecit. Multum potest laborare et domum defendere, et est aliquantulum clericus, quamvis nimix literæ non faciant eum insanire: ille dignus est abbacia.” Respondit alter: “Nolit Deus ut homo, qui non potest legere, nec cantare, nec divina officia celebrare, homo improbus et injustus, et excoriator pauperum

le of souls is the art of arts, the highest form of knowledge. God forbid that a dumb idol be set up in the church of Saint Edmund, where many men are to be found who are learned and industrious.”

Again, one said of another, “That brother is a literate man, eloquent and prudent, and strict in his observance of the rule. He loves the monastery greatly, and has suffered many ills for the good of the church. He is worthy to be made abbot.” Another answered, “From good clerks deliver us, oh Lord! That it may please Thee to preserve us from the cheats of Norfolk;²⁴ we beseech Thee to hear us!”

And again, one said of one, “That brother is a good husbandman; this is proved by the state of his office, and from the posts in which he has served well, and from the buildings and repairs which he has effected. He is well able to work and to defend the house, and he is something of a scholar, though too much learning has not made him mad.²⁵ He is worthy of the abbacy.” Another answered, “God forbid that a man who can neither read nor sing, nor celebrate the holy

²⁴The allusion is to Samson, who was a native of Norfolk.

[†]The words of supplication are taken from the Litany of the Saints.

²⁵Cp. Acts xxvi., 24.

hominum, fiat abbas.”

Item dixit aliquis de aliquo: “Ille frater homo benignus est, affabilis et amabilis, pacificus et compositus, largus et liberalis, vir literatus et eloquens, et satis idonea persona in vultu et in gestu, et a multis dilectus intus et extra; et talis homo ad magnum honorem ecclesiæ posset fieri abbas, si Deus vellet.” Respondit alter: “Non honor esset sed onus de homine qui nimis delicatus est in cibo et potu; qui virtutem reputat multum dormire; qui multum scit expendere et parum adquirere; qui stertit quando ceteri vigilant; qui semper vult esse in abundantia, nec curat de debitis quæ crescunt de die in diem, nec de expensis unde adquietari possint; solitudinem et laborem odio habens, nihil curans, dummodo unus dies vadat et alter veniat; homo adulatores et mendaces diligens et fovens; homo alius in verbo in alius in opere. A tali prælato defendat nos Dominus.”

Item dixit quidam de socio suo: “Ille vir fere sapientior est omnibus nobis, et in sæcularibus et in ecclesiasticis; vir magni consilii, rigidus in ordine, li-

office, a man who is dishonest and unjust, and who evil intreats the poor men, should be made abbot.”

Again, one said of another, “That brother is a kindly man, friendly and amiable, peaceful and calm, generous and liberal, a learned and eloquent man, and proper enough in face and gait. He is beloved of many within and without the walls, and such an one might become abbot to the great honour of the church, if God wills.” Another answered, “It is no credit, but rather a disgrace, in a man to be too particular as to what he eats and drinks, to think it a virtue to sleep much, to know well how to spend and to know little how to gain, to snore while others keep vigil, to wish ever to have abundance, and not to trouble when debts daily increase, or when money spent brings no return; to be one who hates anxiety and toil, caring nothing while one day passes and another dawns; to be one who loves and cherishes flatterers and liars; to be one man in word and another in deed. From such a prelate the Lord defend us.”

And again, one said of his friend, “That man is almost wiser than all of us, and that both in secular and in ecclesiastical matters. He is a man skilled in

teratus et eloquens et personalis statuerat: talis prælatus decet ecclesiam nostram.” Respondit alter: “Verum est, si esset rata et probata opinio. Fama ejus laborat, quæ forte mentitur, forte non mentitur; et licet ille homo sapiens sit, humilis in capitulo, devotus in psalmis, rigidus in claustris, dum claustrale[†] est, ex consuetudine tamen habet: quod si preest in obedientia aliqua, nimis indignans est, monachos parvipendens, sæculares homines familiarius diligens, et, si iratus fuerit, vix aliquid verbum ultro alicui fratri respondere, nec etiam interroganti.”

counsel, strict in the rule, learned and eloquent, and noble in stature; such a prelate would become our church.” Another answered, “That would be true if he were a man of good and approved repute. But his character has been questioned, perhaps falsely, perhaps rightly. And though the man is wise, humble in the chapter, devoted to the singing of psalms, strict in his conduct in the cloister while he is a cloistered monk, this is only from force of habit. For if he have authority in any office, he is too scornful, holding monks of no account, and being on familiar terms with secular men, and if he be angry, he will scarce say a word willingly to any brother, even in answer to a question.”

Audivi scilicet alium fratrem reprobatum a quibusdam, quia impeditioris linguæ fuerat; de quo dicebatur quod habebat pastum vel draschium in ore suo, cum loqui deberet. Et ego quidem, tunc teraporis juvenis, sapiebam ut juvenis, loquebar ut juvenis, et dixi quod non consentirem alicui ut fieret abbas, nisi sciret aliquid de dialectica, et sciret discernere verum a falso. Item dixit quidam, qui sibi videbatur sapiens: “Stultum et idiotam pastorem tribuat nobis omnipotens Domi-

I heard in truth another brother abused by some because he had an impediment in his speech, and it was said of him that he had pastry or draff in his mouth when he should have spoken. And I myself, as I was then young, understood as a child,²⁶ spake as a child; and I said that I would not consent that any one should be made abbot unless he knew something of dialectic, and knew how to distinguish the true from the false. One, moreover, who was wise in his own eyes, said, “May

[†] Claustralis? (Roke.)

²⁶ I. Cor. xiii., 11.

nus, ut necesse sit ei se adjuvare de nobis.” Audivi scilicet quendam virum, industrium, et literatum, et nobilitate generis splendidum, reprobatum esse a quibusdam prioribus nostris hac causa, quia novicius erat. Novicii dicebant de prioribus suis, quod senes valitudinarii erant et ad abbatiam regendam minus idonei. Et ita multi multa loquebantur, et unusquisque abundabat in suo sensu.

How Samson the subsacristan bore himself while others discussed the vacancy.

his conventiculis tempore minutio-
nis (quo tempore claustrales solent
alternatim secreta cordis revelare, et
adinvicem conferre); vidi eum assiden-
tem et subridentem et tacentem,
et singulorum verba notantem, et ali-
quam ex præscriptis sentiis in fine
xx. annorum memorantem.

How the author spoke his mind too hastily.

Vidi Samso-
nem subsacri-
stam assiden-
tem quidem

Quo audiente,
solebam re-
spondere ita

Almighty God give us a foolish and stupid pastor, that he may be driven to use our help.” And I heard, forsooth, that one man who was industrious, learned, and pre-eminent for his high birth, was abused by some of the older men because he was a novice. The novices said of their elders that they were invalid old men, and little capable of ruling an abbey. And so many men said many things, and every man was fully persuaded in his own mind.²⁷

Then I saw Samson the subsacristan sitting by, for the time of this little council was a season of blood-letting,²⁸ when the cloistered monks were wont to reveal the secrets of their hearts in turn, and to discuss matters one with another. I saw him sitting by and laughing to himself, while he kept silence and marked that which each one said, so that at the end of twenty years lie was able to remember some part of the various opinions which I have set forth above.

And when I heard these things, I was wont to answer to those who so judged, and to say that if we had to wait

²⁷ Rom. xiv., 5.

²⁸ The monks practised blood-letting five times a year,—in September, before Advent and Lent, and after Easter and Pentecost, under the rule of St. Victor. An account of the manner in which it was practised at St. Edmund's is to be found in the *Liber Albus*. (Rokewode, p. 113, *Mem.*, I., 221, note.)

judicantibus, dicens, quod, si debemus expectare ad eligendum abbatem donec inveniamus aliquem qui sine omni reprehensione et macula fuerit, nunquam talem inveniemus, quia nemo sine crimine vivit, et nichil omni parte beatum.[†] Quodam tempore non potui cohibere spiritum meum quin præcipitarem sententiam meam, putans me loqui fidis auribus, et dixi quendam indignum abbatia, qui me multum dilexerat prius, et multa bona contulerat; et alium dignum duxi, et nominavi aliquem, quem minus diligebam. Loquebar secundum conscientiam meam, considerans potius communem utilitatem ecclesiæ quam meam promotionem; et verum dixi; quod sequentia probaverunt. Et ecce unus ex filiis Belial dictum meum revelavit benefactori meo et amico; ob quam causam, usque ad hodiernum diem nunquam postea nec prece nec pretio potui recuperare gratiam ejus ad plenum. Quod dixi, dixi;

Et semel emissum volat irrevocabile verbum.[‡]

Unum restat; quod caveam mihi de cætero, et, si tamdiu vixero ut videam abbatiam vacare, videbo quid, cui, et quando loquar de tali materia, ne vel

to choose an abbot until we found one without spot or flaw, we should never find such an one, since there is none living without fault, and nothing altogether good. At one time I could not refrain my spirit, but put forward my own opinion only too readily, thinking that I was speaking to faithful ears. And I said that one was not worthy of the abbacy who had before loved me dearly and done much good to me. And I put forward another as worthy and named him, a man whom I loved but little. I spoke according to my conscience, thinking rather of the general wellbeing of the church than of my own promotion; and I spoke the truth, as subsequent events proved. And behold, one of the sons of Belial revealed my saying to my benefactor and friend, wherefore to this very day I have never been able, by prayer or present, to regain his full favour. What I have said, I have said. And the word once uttered flies beyond recall.

One thing remains for me,—that I take care henceforth; and if I should live long enough to see the abbey once more vacant, I will see what, and to

[†] Hor. Od. ii. 16.

[‡] Hor. Ep. i. 18, 71.

Deum offendam mentiendo, vel hominem importune loquendo. Ad consilium meum tum erit, si duravero, ut aliquem eligamus non multum bonum monachum, non multum sapientem clericum, nec nimis idiotam, nec nimis dissolutum; ne, si nimis sapiat, de se et de proprio sensu nimis confidat, et alios vilipendat; vel si nimis brutescat, in opprobrium aliis fiat. Scio quis dixerit: “medio tutissimus ibis;”[†] et illud, “medium tenuere beati.” Vel forte, sanius consilium erit omnino tacere, ut dicam in corde meo: “Qui potest capere, capiat.”

*How the archbishop of
Norway dwelt in the
abbot's lodgings while the
abbacy was vacant.
A.D. 1181.*

rweie[‡] apud nos in domibus abbatis, habens per præceptum regis singulis

whom, and when I speak of so weighty a matter, that I offend not God by lying or man by hasty talk. Then it will be my care, if I live, that we elect one who is neither a very good monk, nor a very wise clerk, nor too foolish, nor too dissolute; lest, if he know too much, he have also too much confidence in himself and in his own opinion, and hold others of small account; or if he be too foolish, he be abused by others. I know that one has said, “You will walk most safely in the middle,” and that “Blessed are those who steer a middle course.” And perchance it is wiser counsel to be silent altogether, so that I say in my heart, “He that is able to receive it, let him receive it.”²⁹

Vacante abbacia perhendi-
navit Augustinus archie-
piscopus No-

While the abbacy was vacant, Augustine, Archbishop of Norway,³⁰ dwelt with us in the abbot's lodgings, and by command of the king received ten shillings every day from the revenues of the abbot. He assisted us greatly to gain freedom of election, bearing wit-

[†] Ov. Met. ii. 137.

²⁹ Matt. xix., 12.

[‡] In 1180, Eystein (Augustinus), archbishop of Trondheim, refusing to crown Sverrir, a successful rebel, who had defeated Magnus, king of Norway, was driven into exile, and came to England (William de Newburgh, iii. 6). “It appears from the accounts of the wardens of the abbey . . . that the archbishop remained in the monastery from the vigil of St. Lawrence, 9 Aug. 1181, until about the time of the election of abbot Samson, in February following, and that the corrodies allowed him amounted altogether to 94l. 10s.” (Roke.) This Eystein wrote a remarkable biography of St. Olaf, recently edited from the unique MS. by my friend, the late Rev. F. Metcalfe, who was so long and so favourably known as a successful student of Scandinavian antiquity.

diebus x. solidos de denariis abbatiae; qui multum valuit nobis ad habendam liberam electionem nostram, testimonium perhibens de bono,[†] et publice protestans coram rege quod viderat et audierat.

Of the martyrdom of Saint Robert.

A.D. 1181, June 10.

et in ecclesia nostra sepultus, et fiabant prodigia et signa multa in plebe, sicut alibi scripsimus.

How thirteen men were chosen, by command of the king, to elect an abbot in the presence of the king.

A.D. 1182, February.

præcepit dominus rex per literas suas, ut prior noster et duodecim de conventu, in quorum ore universitatis concordaret sententia, apparerent die statuto coram eo ad eligendum abbatem.

Eodem tempore fuit sanctus puer Robertas martirizatus,

Post mortem Hugonis abbatibus, peracto anno cum tribus mensibus,

ness of the good, and publicly declaring in the presence of the king that which he had seen and heard.

In those days was the holy child Robert martyred,³¹ and was buried in our church. And many signs and wonders³² were wrought among the people, as we have related in another place.

Now when a year and three months had passed since the death of Abbot Hugh, the lord king commanded by his letters that our prior and twelve members of the monastery, by whose lips the opinion of the whole community might be expressed unanimously, should appear before him on a stated day to elect an abbot.

[†]Joh. xviii. 23.

³⁰Eystein, archbishop of Trondheim, was banished from Norway for political reasons and came to England in 1180. Rokewode (p. 113) collects from the accounts of the wardship of the abbey that he received £94 10s.

³¹Bale states that there was an account of the martyrdom of this child by the Jews, written by Jocelin. The work, however, is not known to exist at the present day. Gervase (I., 296) relates the event in somewhat similar terms to those in the text: "In this year, at Eastertide, a certain boy, Robert by name, was martyred by the Jews at St. Edmund's, and he was afterwards honourably buried in the church of St. Edmund, and became famous, as common report goes, for many miracles." There is an account also in *Chron. Bur.* (*Mem.* III., 6) where the date (June 10th) is given.

³²Acts v., 12.

In crastino post susceptionem literarum, convenimus in capitulo de tanto tractaturi negotio. In primis lectæ sunt literæ domini regis in conventu; postea rogavimus et oneravimus priorem in periculo animæ suæ, ut xii. secundum conscientiam suam nominaret secum ducendos, de quorum vita et moribus constaret eos a recto nolle deviare.

Qui petitis annuens, dictante Spiritu Sancto, sex ex una parte chori et sex ex altera nominavit, et sine contradictione nobis satisfecit. A dextro choro fuerunt Galfridus de Fordham, Benedictus, magister Dionisius, magister Samson subsacrista, Hugo tertius prior, et magister Hermerus, tunc temporis novicius: a sinistro, Willelmus sacrista, Andreas, Petrus de Broc, Rogerus cellerarius, magister Ambrosius, magister Walterus medicus.

Unus autem dixit: “Quid fiet si isti tredecim non possunt coram rege concordare in abbate eligendo?” Respondit quidam: “Quia hoc erit nobis et ecclesiæ nostræ in opprobrium sempiter-

On the morrow after receiving the letters, we gathered in the chapter for the purpose of performing so important a task. And first the letters of the lord king were read in the assembly of the monastery; then we offered prayers, and bound the prior on the peril of his soul that he should conscientiously nominate to go with him twelve men, from whose life and manners he knew well that they would not stray from the right path.

Then he, by inspiration of the Holy Spirit, gave ear to these prayers, and named six from one side of the choir and six from the other, and he gave us satisfaction without any dispute arising. From the righthand side of the choir he named Geoffrey de Fordham, Benedict, Master Dennis, Master Samson the subsacristan, Hugh the third prior, and Master Hermer, who was then a novice. From the left side he named William the sacristan, Andrew, Peter de Broc, Roger the cellarer, Master Ambrose, and Master Walter the physician.

But one said, “What shall be done if these thirteen cannot agree on the choice of an abbot in the presence of the king?” One answered, “That would be a perpetual shame³³ to us

³³ Jer. xxiii., 40.

num." Voluerunt ideo plures ut electio fieret domi antequam cæteri recederent, ut per hanc providentiam non fieret dissensio coram rege; sed illud nobis videbatur stultum et dissonum facere sine regis assensu, quia nondum constabat nobis posse impetrare a domino rege ut liberam electionem haberemus.

*How Samson suggested
that the monastery should
appoint men to make a
secret choice of an abbot,
and how this was done.*

hinc et inde periculum evitetur. Eligantur quatuor confessores de conventu, et duo ex senioribus prioribus de conventu, bonæ opinionis, qui, visis sacrosanctis, tactis evangeliis, inter se eligant tres viros de conventu, ad hoc magis idoneos juxta regulam sancti Benedicti, et eorum nomina in scriptum redigant, et scriptum sub sigillo includant, et sic inclusum committatur nobis ituris ad curiam; et cum venerimus coram rege, et constiterit nobis de libera electione habenda, tunc demum frangatur sigillum, et sic certi erimus qui tres nominandi erunt coram rege. Et constiterit nobis, si

and our church." For that cause many wished that the election might be made at home before the departure of the rest, so that by this means there might be no dissension in the presence of the king. But it seemed to us foolish and unbecoming to do this without the royal assent, since as yet we had no certain knowledge that we should obtain freedom of election from the lord king.

Then Samson the subsacristan, speaking by the Spirit of God,³⁴ said, "Let a middle course be taken, that so danger may be avoided on either side. Let four confessors be chosen from the monastery, and two of the older priors, men of repute, and let them look upon and take in their hands the most holy gospels, and choose among themselves three members of the monastery, men especially fitted according to the rule of the holy Benedict for this purpose. Then let them write down the names and seal that which is written, and let them give the writing thus secured to us on the eve of our departure for the court. And when we are come to the court, if it shall be determined that we have free election, then and not till then let the seal be broken, and so shall we know certainly the three

³⁴I. Cor. xii., 3.

dominus rex noluerit concedere nobis unum de nostris, reportetur sigillum integrum et sex juratoribus tradatur, ita quod secretum illorum imperpetuum celetur in periculum animarum suarum.”

who must be named in the presence of the king. Let it also be resolved that if the lord king will not grant us one of our own number, then the writing shall be brought back, with the seal unbroken, and delivered to the six sworn men, that so their secret may remain a secret for ever on the peril of their souls.”

Huic consilio omnes adquevimus, et nominati sunt quatuor confessores; scilicet Eustachius, Gilbertus de Alueth, Hugo tertius prior, Antonius, et alii duo senes, Turstanus et Rualdus. Quo facto, exivimus cantantes, “Verba mea,” et remanserunt prædicti sex habentes regulam sancti Benedicti præ manibus, et negotium sicut præfinitum fuerat impleverunt.

In this council we all agreed, and the four confessors were nominated, to wit, Eustace, Gilbert de Alueth, Hugh the third prior, and Anthony, with two other old men, Thurstan and Rualdus. And when this had been done, we went out chanting the “Verba mea,”³⁵ while the said six remained behind with the rule of St. Benedict in their hands, and completed the matter as had been ordained.

Dum illi sex hoc tractabant, nos de diversis eligendis diversa putabamus, habentes tamen omnes quasi pro certo Samsonem esse unum ex tribus, attendentes labores ejus et pericula mortis versus Romam pro bonis ecclesiæ nostræ, et qualiter tractus et compeditus et incarceratus erat ab H. abbate, loquens pro communi utilitate; qui nec sic flecti potuit ad adulandum, licet cogi potuit ad tacendum

While these six men performed their work, we had various opinions as to the choice of different men, but all considered it to be certain that Samson would be one of them. For they called to mind his labours and the danger of death, which he had endured in his journey to Rome³⁶ for the good of our church, and how he had been ill treated, and bound, and put in prison by Abbot Hugh, because he spoke to the

³⁵Ps. v., Vulgate.

³⁶For Samson’s own account of this, see text, p. 77 ff.

common advantage. And they considered he was a man who could not be brought to flatter, though he might be driven to keep silence.

Facta autem mora, vocatus conventus rediit in capitulum. Et dixerunt senes se fecisse secundum quod præceptum eis fuerat.

So, after some delay, the whole monastery was summoned to return to the chapter. And the old men said that they had done as had been commanded them.

How, on the advice of Samson, it was decided what should be done if the king would not grant freedom of election.

Tunc prior quæsit, quid fuerit si dominus rex nollet aliquem ex il-

Then the prior asked what and if the lord king would not accept any one of the three whose names were written down. And it was answered that, since whomsoever the king wished to be received, must be received, there was but one course open to our church. It was added also that if those thirteen brothers should see in any writing aught that should be altered, they should make the alteration, according to God, unanimously and after consultation.

lis tribus in scriptis recipere; et responsum est, quod quemcunque vellet dominus rex suscipere, susciperetur, dum modo esset processus ecclesiæ nostræ. Adjectum est etiam quod, si illi tredecim fratres viderent aliquid in alio scripto quod emendari deberet, secundum Deum de communi assensu vel consilio emendarent.

Samson subsacrista sedens ad pedes prioris dixit: "Ecclesiæ expedire si omnes juraremus in verbo veritatis, ut super quemcunque sors electionis caderet conventum rationabiliter tractaret, nec capitales obedientiales mutaret sine assensu conventus, nec sacristam gravaret, nec aliquem monacaret sine voluntate conventus;" et hoc ipsum

Samson the subsacristan, sitting at the feet of the prior, said, "It would be for the good of the church were all to swear on the word of truth that on whomsoever the lot of election shall fall, that man shall treat the monastery reasonably, and not change the chief officials without the assent of the house, nor burden the sacristan,

concessimus, omnes dexteras erigentes in signum concessionis. Provisum est quod, si dominus rex vellet aliquem extraneum abbatem facere, non reciperetur a tredecim nisi per consilium fratrum domi remanentium.

*How the chosen thirteen
journeyed to the king.*

In crastino igitur iter arripuerunt illi tredecim versus curiam. Postremus omnium fuit Samson provisor expensarum, quia subsacrista erat, circa collum scrinium portans, quo literæ conventus continebantur, quasi omnium minister solus, et, sine armigero, froggum suum in ulnis bajulans, curiam exivit, socios sequens a longe.

In itinere versus curiam convenientibus fratribus in unum, dixit Samson bonum esse ut jurarent omnes, ut quicumque fieret abbas, redderet ecclesias de dominiis conventus in usum hospitalitatis; quod omnes concesserunt præter priorem, qui dixit: “Satis iuravimus; tantum potestis gravare abbatem, quod ego non curabo abbatiam.” Et hac occasione non iuraverunt; et hoc bene actum est, quia si hoc esset

nor make any one a monk without the consent of the monastery.” And we agreed on this matter, all raising their right hands in token of their approval. And it was provided that if the lord king willed that some stranger should be made abbot, the thirteen should not accept this man save with the advice of the brothers who remained at home.

On the morrow, therefore, these thirteen set out for the court. Last of all was Samson, who had charge of the expenses of the journey as being subsacristan. And he bore a letter-case round his neck, in which were contained the letters of the monastery, as if he were only servant of them all. So, with no attendant, and with his frock borne in his arms, he went out of the court, and followed far behind his comrades.

On their journey to the court, the brothers gathered together, and Samson said that it would be well if all were to swear that whoever might be made abbot, should restore the churches on the demesne lands of the monastery to the exercise of hospitality. To this all agreed save the prior, and he said, “We have sworn enough; you will so limit the power of the abbot, that I would not care to be abbot at all.” And for

juratum, non esset observatum.

*Of the dreams which the
brothers dreamed
concerning the election of a
new abbot.*

Eodem die quo tredecim recesserunt, sedentibus nobis in clauistro, dixit Willelmus de Hastings unus ex fratribus nostris: "Scio quod habebimus abbatem unum de nostris;" et interrogatus quomodo hoc sciret, respondit, se vidisse in somnis prophetam albis indutum stantem præ foribus monasterii, et se quæsisse in nomine Domini utrum haberemus abbatem aliquem de nostris. Et respondit propheta: "Habebitis unum de vestris, sed sæviet inter vos ut lupus." Cujus somnii significatio secuta in parte, quia futurus abbas studuit magis timeri quam amari, sicut plures dicebant.

Assedit et alius frater, Ædmundus nomine, asserens quod Samson futurus esset abbas, et narrans visionem quam proxima nocte viderat. Dixit se vidisse in somnis R. celerarium et H. tertium priorem stantes ante altare, et Samsonem in medio, eminentem ab humeris supra, pallio circumdatum longo et talari, ligato in humeris ejus, et stantem quasi pugilem ad duellum

this reason, they did not swear; and it was well that they did not do, for had this oath been taken it would not have been observed.

Then on the day on which the thirteen departed, while we were sitting in the cloister, William de Hastings, one of our brothers, said, "I know that we shall have one of our own number as abbot." And when he was asked how he knew this, he answered that he had beheld in dreams a prophet, clothed in white, standing before the gates of the monastery. Him he had asked in the name of the Lord whether we should have one of ourselves as abbot. And the prophet answered, "Ye shall have one of your own number, but he shall raven as a wolf among you." And this dream was partly fulfilled, since he that became abbot strove rather to be feared than loved, as many were wont to say.

Another brother also, Edmund by name, was sitting by, and declared that Samson would be abbot, relating a dream which he had seen on the previous night. For he said that he had seen in dreams Roger the cellarer and Hugh the third prior standing before the altar, and Samson in their midst, head and shoulders taller than they, and wearing a long and flowing cloak,

faciendum. Et surrexit sanctus Eadmundus de feretro, sicut ei somnianti visum fuerat, et quasi languidus pedes et tibias nudas exposuit, et accedente quodam et volente operire pedes sancti, dixit sanctus: "Noli accedere: Ecce! ille velabit mihi pedes," prætendens digitum versus Samsonem. Hæc est interpretatio somnii:—Per hoc quod pugil videbatur, significatur quod futurus abbas semper in labore existens, quandoque movens controversiam contra archiepiscopum Cantuariensem de placitis coronæ, quandoque contra milites sancti Eadmundi pro scutagiis integre reddendis, quandoque cum burgensibus pro purpresturis in foro, quandoque cum sochemannis pro sectis hundredorum; quasi pugil volens pugnando superare adversarios, ut jura et libertates ecclesiæ suæ posset revocare. Velavit autem pedes sancti martyris, quando turres ecclesiæ a centum annis inceptas perfecte consummavit.

Hujusmodi somnia somniabant fratres nostri, quæ statim divulgabantur, primo per claustrum, postea per cu-

fastened at his shoulders, and he was standing as it were like a champion about to engage in a duel. Then the holy Edmund arose from his shrine as it seemed to the brother in his dream and showed his feet and legs bare, as though sickness was upon him. Then when one rose and would have covered the feet of the saint, the saint said, "Come not near. Lo! he shall cover my feet," and pointed his finger towards Samson. This is the interpretation of the dream: In that a champion was seen, this signified that he who was to become abbot would be constant in labour, alike when disputing with the archbishop of Canterbury about the pleas of the crown, and when striving with the knights of St. Edmund for the full payment of scutages, or with the burghers about encroachments on the market, or with the sokemen for the suits of hundreds; and that he was as it were a champion anxious to overcome his enemies by fighting, that so far as in him lay he might recover the rights and liberties of his church. Moreover, he covered the feet of the holy martyr, when he completed fully the towers of the church, which had been begun a hundred years before.

Such dreams did our brothers dream, and at once told them first of all in the cloister and then in the court. And so

riam, ita quod ante vesperam publice dicebatur in plebe, ille et ille et ille electi sunt, et unus eorum erit abbas.

How the thirteen came to the king and showed to him the names of those whom the confessors had selected.

1182, February 21.

Prior autem et xii. cum eo post labores et dilationes multas tandem steterunt coram rege apud Waltham, manerium Wintoniensis episcopi, secunda Dominica quadragesimæ. Quos dominus rex benigne suscepit, et asserens se velle secundum Deum agere et ad honorem ecclesiæ nostræ, præcepit fratribus per internuncios, scilicet, Ricardum episcopum Wintoniensem et G. cancellarium, postea archiepiscopum Eboracensem, ut nominarent tres de conventu nostro.

Prior vero et fratres se divertentes, quasi inde collocuturi, extraxerunt sigillum et fregerunt et invenerunt hæc nomina sub tali ordine scripta,—Samson subsacrista, R. celerarius,

it came to pass that before vespers the people openly said that this and this and this man was elected, and that one of them would be abbot.

So the prior and the twelve with him, after many labours stood at last in the presence of the king at Waltham,³⁷ a manor of the bishop of Winchester, on the second Sunday in Lent. And the lord king received them graciously, and declared that he wished to act according to the will of God and for the honour of our church. Then he gave command to the brothers through his proctors, Richard bishop of Winchester³⁸ and Geoffrey the chancellor,³⁹ who was afterwards archbishop of York, that they should nominate three members of our monastery.

Then the prior and the brothers withdrew themselves, as it were to discuss this matter, and drew forth the seal and broke it, and found these names written down in this order,—Samson

³⁷ Bishop's Waltham, in Hampshire.

³⁸ Richard Toclive, archdeacon of Poitiers (1162–73), elected bishop of Winchester in 1173; died in 1188.

³⁹ Son of Henry II. by some woman of low birth. He became bishop-elect of Lincoln in 1173, but resigned his see and was made chancellor in 1182. In 1189 he secured the archbishopric of York by forgery, as his enemies asserted, and certainly by bribery. From that time his life was one long quarrel with Richard I. and John, and with the chapter of York and Hubert Walter, both as dean of York and as archbishop. Eventually, he fled into exile as the result of his refusal to meet the financial demands of John, and died in Normandy in 1212.

Hugo tertius prior. Erubuerunt inde fratres qui maioris dignitatis erant. Mirabantur etiam omnes eundem Hugonem esse electorem et electum. Quia tamen rem mutare non poterant, ordinem nominum de communi consilio mutaverunt, pronuntiando primum H. quia tertius prior erat; secundo R. celerarium; tertio Samsonem, facientes verbo tenus novissimum primum et primum novissimum.

the sub-sacristan, Roger the cellarer, and Hugh the third prior. And at this the brothers who were of greater dignity blushed. Moreover all marvelled that the same Hugh should be both an elector and one of the elected. But because they could not alter the thing they unanimously changed the order of the names, naming Hugh, because he was third prior, first, and Roger the cellarer next, and Samson third. Thus, as far as words went, they made the last first, and the first last.⁴⁰

Rex vero, primo quærens an nati essent in sua terra, et in cujus dominio, dixit se non nosse eos, mandans ut cum illis tribus alios tres nominarent de conventu.

But the king, having first asked whether they were born in his land, and in whose lordship, said that he did not know them, and commanded that they should name three other members of the monastery with them.

How the thirteen, by command of the king, chose three other names from the monastery, and three strangers.

caput nostrum est:" quod cito concessum est. Dixit prior: "W. sacrista bonus vir est." Similiter dictum est de Dionisio, et concessum est. Quibus nominatis coram rege sine omni mora, mirabatur rex, dicens: "Cito fecerunt isti. Deus est cum eis."

Quo concesso, dixit W. sacrista: "Prior noster debet nominari, quia

And when this had been granted, William the sacristan said, "Our prior ought to be nominated, for he is our head," and this was readily agreed. Then the prior said, "William the sacristan is a good man." The same was said of Dennis, and was agreed. And when these were named in the presence of the king without any delay, the king marvelled, saying, "These men act quickly. God is with them."

⁴⁰Matt. xix., 30.

Postea mandavit rex ut propter honorem regni sui nominarent tres personas de aliis domibus. Quo audito, timebant fratres suspicantes dolum. Tandem consilium inierunt ut nominarent tres, sed sub conditione, scilicet, ut nullum reciperent nisi per consilium conventus qui domi fuit. Et nominaverunt tres, magistrum Nicholaum de Waringeford, postea ad horam abbatem de Malmsberi;[†] et Bertrandum priorem Sanctæ Fidis, postea abbatem de Certeseia;[‡] et dominum H. de Sancto Neoto, monachum de Becco, virum admodum religiosum et in temporalibus et spiritualibus admodum circumspectum.

And after that the king commanded that for the honour of the kingdom, they should nominate three persons from other houses. When they heard this the brothers feared, for they suspected a fraud. Yet did they agree to nominate three, but under conditions, namely, that they would receive no one save with the assent of the members of the monastery who were at home. And they named three, master Nicholas de Waringford,⁴¹ who was afterwards for awhile abbot of Malmesbury, and Bertrand, prior of St. Faith's, who was afterwards abbot of Chertsey, and lord H. de St. Neots,⁴² a monk of Bec, a most pious man, and in both secular and spiritual matters very prudent.

How the list of names was reduced from nine to two.

Quo facto mandavit rex, gratias agens, ut tres removerentur de novem, et statim remoti sunt alieni tres, scilicet prior Sanctæ Fidei, postea Certeseiensis abbas, et Nicholaus monachus Sancti Albani, postea abbas

When this had been done, the king sent them thanks and commanded that three of the nine should be removed, and the three strangers were at once removed, that is, the prior of St. Faith's, who was afterwards abbot of Chertsey, and Nicholas, the monk of St. Alban's, who was afterwards abbot

[†]“This Nicholas, a monk of St. Alban's, prior of Wallingford, succeeded Osbert Foliot as abbot of Malmesbury about the year 1183, and was deposed in 1187.” So Mr. Rokewode, from the *Monasticon*, “Ad horam” must therefore mean “for a season.”

⁴¹ A monk of St. Alban's, prior of Wallingford. He became abbot of Malmesbury about 1163, but was deposed in 1187. (Rokewode, p. 114.)

[‡]“Bertrand [Bertan] succeeded Aymer, abbot of Chertsey” (Roke.); his successor, Martin, was elected in 1197.

⁴² There was a Herbert, prior of St. Neot's in 1159 and in 1173. (Rokewode, p. 114.)

Malmsberiensis, et prior Sancti Neoti.

of Malmesbury, and the prior of St. Neot's.

Willelmus sacrista sponte cessit; remoti sunt duo ex quinque per præceptum regis; et postea unus ex tribus, et remanserunt tum duo, scilicet, prior et Samson.

William the sacristan of his accord withdrew, two of the five were removed by the order of the king, and finally one of the last three, so that there remained then two, namely, the prior and Samson.

*How Samson was elected
abbot.*

Tunc tandem
vocati sunt ad
consilium fra-

trum prænominati internuntii domini regis. Et loquens Dionisius, unus pro omnibus, cœpit commendare personas prioris et Samsonis, dicens utrumque eorum literatum, utrumque bonum, utrumque laudabilem vitæ et integre opinionis, sed semper in angulo sui sermonis Samsonem protulit, multiplicans verba in laudem ejus, dicens eum esse virum rigidum in conversatione, severum in corrigendis excessibus, et aptum ad labores, et in sæcularibus curis prudentem, et in diversis officiis probatum.

Then at last the above-mentioned proctors of the lord king were summoned to the council of the brothers. And Dennis, speaking as one for all, began to commend the persons of the prior and Samson. He said that they were both learned men, both good, both praiseworthy in their lives and of unblemished reputation. But ever at the climax of his speech he put forward Samson, multiplying words in his praise, saying that he was a man strict in his conduct, stern in correcting faults, apt for labour, prudent in temporal matters, and proved in divers offices.

Respondit Wintoniensis: "Bene intelligimus quod vultis dicere; ex verbis vestris conjicimus quod prior vester vobis videtur aliquantulum remissus, et illum qui Samson dicitur vultis habere." Respondit Dionisius: "Uterque bonus est, sed meliorem vellemus ha-

Then the bishop of Winchester answered, "We know well what you would say, from your words we gather that your prior has appeared to you to be somewhat slack, and that you wish to have him who is called Samson." Dennis answered, "Both of them are good

bere si Deus vellet.” Cui episcopus: “Duorum bonorum magis bonum eligendum est: dicite aperte, vultis habere Samsonem?” Et responsum est præcise a pluribus et a majori parte, “Volumus Samsonem,” nullo reclamante, quibusdam tamen tacentibus ex industria, nec hunc nec illum offendere volentibus.

Nominato Samsone, coram domino rege, et habito brevi consilio cum suis, vocati sunt omnes, et dixit rex: “Vos præsentastis mihi Samsonem: non novi eum: si præsentaretis mihi priorem vestrum, illum reciperem quem vidi et agnovi; sed modo faciam quod vultis. Cavete vobis; per veros oculos Dei, si male feceritis, ego me capiam ad vos.”

Et interrogavit priorem si assentiret, et hoc vellet; qui respondit se hoc velle, et Samsonem multo majore dignum honore. Electus igitur, ad pedes regis procidens et deosculans, festinanter surrexit et festinanter ad altare tetendit, cantando: “Miserere mei Deus,” cum fratribus, erecto capite, vultu non mutato.

men, but we desire to have the better, if God wills.” Thereupon the bishop said, “Of two good things, the greater good should be selected. Say openly, do you desire to have Samson?” And many, and they a majority, answered plainly, “We wish to have Samson,” and none spoke against him. Some, however, were silent from caution, wishing to offend neither candidate.

Then Samson was nominated in the presence of the lord king, and when the king had consulted with his men for a while, all were summoned. And the king said, “You have presented to me Samson. I know him not. If you had presented your prior to me, I would have accepted him, for I have seen and know him. But I will only do what you will. Take heed to yourselves; by the true eyes of God, if you do ill, I will exact a recompense at your hands.”

Then he asked the prior if he assented to the choice and wished it, and the prior answered that he did will it, and that Samson was worthy of much greater honour. Therefore he was elected, and fell at the king’s feet and embraced them. Then he arose quickly and hastened to the altar, with his head erect and without changing his expression,

chanting the “Miserere mei, Deus”⁴³ with the brothers.

Quod cum rex vidisset, dixit astantibus: “Per oculos Dei,[†] iste electus videtur sibi dignus abbatiae custodiendae.”

How the news of the election came to the monastery and how Samson was blessed.

A.D. 1182, February 28.

Hujus electionis rumor cum ad conventum perveniret, omnes

claustrales vel fere omnes, et quosdam obedientiales, sed paucos, lætificavit: “Bene,” multi dicebant, “quia bene est.” Alii dicebant quod “non; imo, omnes seducti sumus.”

Electus, antequam rediret ad nos, benedictionem suam accepit a domino Wintoniensi, qui in eadem hora mitram capiti abbatis imponens et annulum digito, ait: “Hæc est dignitas abbatum sancti Eadmundi: diu est ex quo scivi hoc.”

Abbas itaque tres monachos secum

And when the king saw this, he said to those that stood by, “By the eyes of God, this elect thinks that he is worthy to rule the abbey.”

The news of this election came to the monastery, and all the cloistered monks or almost all of them were rejoiced, and also some of the officials, but few. “It is well,” said many, “because it is well.” Others said that this was not so, “Of a truth, we have all been bewitched.”

Before he returned to us, the elect received his benediction⁴⁴ from the lord of Winchester, who in the same hour in the which he placed the mitre on the abbot’s head and the ring on his finger, said, “This man is worthy of the abbacy of St. Edmund, and for a long while have I known it.”

Therefore the abbot retained with him

⁴³ Ps. 50, Vulgate.

[†] These strange oaths were constantly in the mouths of the Anglo-Norman and Angevin kings. William Rufus used to swear by “the holy Face of Lucca.”

⁴⁴ At Merewell, near Newport, I.W. He received his benediction from Richard of Winchester and Augustine, bishop of Waterford, on February 28th (*Chron. Bur., Mem. III., 7, and Ann. St. Ed., Mem. II., 5*). From the same sources we learn that Samson was received at St. Edmund’s on Palm Sunday, March 21st.

retinens, alios domum præmisit, nuntians adventum suum Dominica Palmarum, quibusdam commendans curam ad providenda necessaria in die festi sui.

How Samson, having been made abbot, returned and was received at the monastery.
A.D. 1182, March 21.

servire; qui omnibus respondit, se esse contentum servantibus prioris, nec alios posse retinere, donec inde consulisset conventum suum. Unum tamen militem retinuit eloquentem et juris peritum, non tantum consideratione proximitatis, sed ratione utilitatis, causis quidem sæcularibus assuetum; quem suscepit in novitate sua quasi coadjutorem in mundanis controversiis, quia novus abbas erat, et rudis in talibus, sicut ipsemet protestatus est: quia nunquam ante susceptam abbatiam loco interfuit ubi datum esset vadium et plegium.

Cum debito honore et etiam processione receptus est a conventu suo, Dominica Palmarum.

Susceptus est autem dominus abbas hoc modo: proxima nocte jacuerat apud Chenteford, et accepta tempo-

three monks, and allowed the rest to return home. And he announced that he would himself come on Palm Sunday, and charged certain men with the care of providing those things which might be necessary for his feast.

On his homeward way a multitude of new relations met him, desiring to serve him. But he answered all of them that he was content with the servants of the prior, and that he was unable to maintain others until he had consulted the monastery on the matter. But one knight he did retain, a man who was eloquent and skilled in the law. This he did not only from consideration of their relationship, but from arguments of utility also, as he was indeed used to secular affairs. He received him as a novice and as his assessor in temporal disputes. For he was a new abbot and unskilful in such matters, as he himself protested, since until he received the abbacy he had never held any office in which surety and pledge was given.

On Palm Sunday he was received with due honour and with ceremony also by his monastery.

Now the lord abbot was thus received. The night before he had lain at Kentford, and at the proper moment we

ris opportunitate, ivimus contra eum solempniter, post exitum de capitulo, usque ad portam cimiterii, sonantibus campanis in choro et extra. Ipse vero multitudine hominum constipatus, videns conventum, descendit de equo extra limen portæ, et faciens se discalciari, intra portam nudipes susceptus est, priore et sacrista hinc et inde ducentibus eum. Nos vero cantavimus responsoria, “Benedictus Dominus,” de Trinitate, et post, “Martiri adhuc,” de sancto Eadmundo; ducentes abbatem usque ad magnum altare.

went to meet him in the solemn procession, after leaving the chapter, as far as the gate of the graveyard, while bells were rung in the choir and outside it. But he was surrounded by a multitude of men, and when he saw the monastery, dismounted from his horse without the threshold of the gate, and causing his sandals to be removed, was received within the door barefooted, the prior and the sacristan supporting him on either side. And we chanted the responses “Benedictus Dominus”⁴⁵ from the service for Trinity Sunday, and afterwards the “Martiri adhuc”⁴⁶ from that for St. Edmund, and conducted the abbot as far as the high altar.

Quibus peractis, siluerunt et organa et campanæ, et dicta oratione a priore, “Omnipotens sempiterne Deus, miserere huic,”[†] &c. super abbatem prostratum, et facta oblatione ab abbate, et deosculato feretro, rediit in chorum, et ibi recepit eum Samson cantor per manum, et duxit usque ad sedem abbatis ad occidentalem partem, ubi, eo

And when this had been done, the organs and bells were silenced, and the prior said the prayer “Omnipotens sempiterne Deus, miserere huic,”⁴⁷ over the prostrate abbot. Then the abbot made oblation and kissed the shrine, and returned to the choir. There Samson the precentor took him by the hand and led him to the abbot’s

⁴⁵ Response at matins after the second lesson on Trinity Sunday. (Rokewode, p. 18.)

⁴⁶ A response following the sixth lesson at matins on St. Edmund’s day. Rokewode (p. 115) gives the musical notes which accompany it from a life of the saint of the time of abbot Anselm. Rokewode seems to suggest that this was one of the antiphons composed in honour of St. Edmund by Warner, abbot of Rebaix, for which see Hermannus, *De Mir. St. Eadmundi* (*Mem. I.*, 69–70).

[†] Collect. Missæ Votivæ lxxi. in Sacrament. Gregor.—Liturgia Romana Vetus. Muratori, tom. ii, p. 90. (Rokewode.)

⁴⁷ Liturgia Romana Vetus. (Rokewode, p. 18, note 4.)

stante, in directum incepit cantor: "Te Deum laudamus;" quod dum decantabatur, deosculatur a priore et a toto conventu per ordinem.

Quibus expletis, ivit abbas in capitulum, sequente conventu et multis aliis. Dicto autem "Benedicite," in primis gratias egit conventui quod eum, ut aiebat, minimum eorum, non suis meritis, sed sola Dei voluntate, in dominum et pastorem elegerunt. Rogansque breviter ut orarent pro eo, convertit sermonem ad clericos et milites, rogans, ut eum consulerent ad sollicitudinem commissi regiminis.

Et respondens Wimerus vicecomes pro omnibus, dixit: "Et nos parati sumus vobis consistere in consilio et auxilio omnibus modis, sicut caro domino quem Dominus vocavit ad honorem suum et ad honorem sancti martyris Eadmundi."

Et deinde extractæ sunt cartæ regis, et lectæ in audientia de donatione abba-

chair on the western side of the choir, and while he stood there the precentor at once began "Te Deum laudamus," and while it was being chanted, the abbot was embraced by the prior and by the whole monastery.

And so, these ceremonies being completed, the abbot entered the chapter, the whole monastery and many others following. He said many times "Benedicite," and then he first returned thanks to the monastery that they had chosen him, the least of them all, as he said, not for his own merits but only by the will of God, to be their lord and pastor. And asking in a few words that they would pray for him, he addressed the clerks and knights, and asked them to advise him for the good of the monastery.

Then Wimer, the sheriff,⁴⁸ answered for them all, and said, "We also are ready to be with you in counsel and in helping you in every way, as with a dear lord whom the Lord has called for His honour, and for the honour of the holy martyr Edmund."

Afterwards the charters of the king concerning the donation of the abbacy

⁴⁸Rokewode (p. 116) collects from the Pipe Rolls of Norfolk and Suffolk that Wimer was a sheriff of Norfolk and Suffolk in conjunction with Bartholomew Glanvill, and William Bardolf from the 16th to the 22nd years of Henry II.; and sheriff alone from then to the 34th year of Henry II.

tiæ. Facta autem oratione ab ipso abbate, ut ei Deus consuleret secundum gratiam suam, et responso “amen” ab omnibus, ivit in talamum suum, diem festivum agens cum plus quam mille comedentibus, in gaudio magno.

*How abbot Samson began
to rule the monastery.*

Quando hæc fiebant, eram capellanus prioris, et infra quatuor menses capellanus abbatis factus, plurima notans et memoriæ commendans. In crastino ergo festi sui, convocavit priorem et alios quosdam paucos, quasi consilium ab aliis quærens: ipse enim sciebat quid esset factururus.

Dixit novum sigillum[†] esse faciendum, et cum mitra esse pingendum, licet prædecessores sui tale non haberent; sigillo autem prioris nostri hucusque usus fuerat, singulis literis in fine subscribens, quod proprium sigillum non habuit, unde et sigillo prioris oportuit uti ad tempus. Postea disponens domui suæ, diversos famulos diversis officiis deputavit, dicens

were brought forth, and were read in the hearing of all. The abbot himself also prayed that God would guide him according to His grace, and all answered “Amen.” Then he went into his own chamber, and celebrated his day of festival with more than a thousand guests and with great joy.

In those days I was prior’s chaplain, and within four months was made chaplain to the abbot. And I noted many things and committed them to memory. So, on the morrow of his feast, the abbot assembled the prior and some few others together, as if to seek advice from others, but he himself knew what he would do.

He said that a new seal⁴⁹ must be made and adorned with a mitred effigy of himself, though his predecessors had not had such a seal. For a time, however, he used the seal of our prior, writing at the end of all letters that he did so for the time being because he had no seal of his own. And afterwards he ordered his household,⁵⁰ and transferred various officials to

[†] As the frontispiece to his edition of the Chronicle, Mr. Gage Rokewode gives an engraving of an impression from this seal, answering to the description in the text, which is still attached to a document among the archives of Christ Church, Canterbury.

⁴⁹ A reproduction of this seal appears as a frontispiece to Rokewode’s edition.

⁵⁰ John vi., 6.

se prægogitasse viginti sex equos in curia sua habendos; et ad plus asserens, "puerum prius repere, postea firmius stare et ire;" hoc super omnia famulis prægiciens, ut caverent ne in novitate sua possit infamari avaritia cibi vel potus, sed hospitalitatem domus solícite procurarent.

In his et in omnibus rebus agendis et constituendis de Dei auxilio et proprio sensu plenius confidens, inglorium duxit de alieno pendere consilio, tanquam ipse sibi sufficeret. Mirabantur monachi, indignabantur milites; damnautes eum arrogancia, et quodammodo infamantes eum apud curiam regis, et dicentes quia nollet operari secundum consilium suorum liberorum hominum. Ipse magnates abbatiæ, tam laicos quam literatos, sine quorum consilio et auxilio abbatia videbatur non posse regi, omnes a privato suo elongavit consilio; et hac occasione Ranulfus de Glanvill, justiciarius Angliæ, primo eum suspectum habebat, et minus propitius ei erat quam deceret, donec ei certis indiciis constaret abbatem tam in interioribus quam exterioribus negotiis provide et

other offices, saying that he proposed to maintain twenty-six horses in his court, and many times he declared that "a child must first crawl, and afterwards he may stand upright and walk." And he laid this especial command upon his servants, that they should take care that he might not be laid open to the charge of not providing enough food and drink, but that they should assiduously provide for the maintenance of the hospitality of the house.

In these matters, and in all the things which he did and determined, he trusted fully in the help of God and his own good sense, holding it to be shameful to rely upon the counsel of another, and thinking he was sufficient unto himself. The monks marvelled and the knights were angered; they blamed his pride, and often defamed him at the court of the king, saying that he would not act in accordance with the advice of his freemen. He himself put away from his privy council all the great men of the abbey, both lay and literate, men without whose advice and assistance it seemed impossible that the abbey could be ruled. For this reason Ranulf de Glanvill, justiciar of England, was at first offended with him, and was less well-disposed towards him than was expe-

prudenter agere.

*How the abbot met the
demand of Thomas de
Hastings that his nephew
should be steward.
A.D. 1182 April 1.*

Facta summonitione generali, conveniunt omnes barones et milites et liberi homines ut facerent homagium quarto die Paschæ: et ecce! Thomas de Hastingo, cum magna multitudo militum, ducens Henricum nepotem suum nondum militem, clamans senescaldiam[†] cum consuetudinibus suis, sicut carta ejus loquitur. Quibus abbas statim respondit: "Henrico non nego jus suum, nec negare volo. Si sciret in propria persona mihi servire, concederem ei et decem hominibus et octo equis necessaria in mea curia, sicut carta ejus loquitur; si præsentetis mihi senescaldum, vicarium ejus, qui sciat et possit senescaldiam regere, recipiam eum in tali statu, sicut prædecessor meus eum habuit die quo fuit vivus et mortuus, scilicet cum iiiij^{or} equis et pertinentiis. Quod si

dient, until he knew well from definite proofs that the abbot acted providently and prudently, both in domestic and in external affairs.

A general summons was sent out, and on the fourth day of Easter all the barons, and knights, and freemen came to do homage. And, lo! Thomas de Hastings came also with a great multitude of knights, and brought with him Henry his nephew,⁵¹ who was not yet a knight, and for whom he demanded the office of steward with the customary dues thereof, as his charter provided. And to this demand the abbot at once answered, "I neither deny, nor wish to deny, his right to Henry. If he were able to serve me in his own person, I would grant him the means of supporting ten men and eight horses in my court. And if you will present a steward to me, who knows how to fulfil the office of steward and is able to do so, I will receive him on the same terms as my predecessor had his steward on the day whereon he was alive and dead, that is, I will allow him four horses with the things needful for

⁵¹ Rokewode (p. 116 ff) prints the charters upon which Henry de Hastings claimed to be hereditary steward of the liberty of St. Edmund's.

[†] A seneschal (*senscalcus*, *senescallus*, *senescaldus*) originally meant the servant placed over the household, as "marshal" (*mariscalus*) meant the servant placed over the horses. The origin of the first part of the word is unknown; probably it is some Teutonic word like *sin*, meaning "old." In the twelfth century the seneschal generally administered justice for his lord, and this was the case at Bury, as Samson's remarks on Gilbert's appointment show.

nolueritis, pono loquelam coram rege vel coram capitali justicia.”

Quo dicto, cepit res dilationem: postea præsentatus est ei quidam senescaldus simplex et idiota, Gilbertus nomine, quem antequam suscepisset, dixit familiaribus suis: “Si defectus fuerit de justitia regis servanda per inscientiam senescaldi, ipse erit in misericordia regis et non ego, quia senescaldiam vendicat sibi jure hæreditario: et ideo ad præsens malo istum recipere, quam alium magis argutum ad me decipiendum. Ego mihi ero senescaldus cum auxilio Dei.”

How the abbot dealt with the lands of his house.

Post homagia suscepta, petivit abbas auxilium a militibus, qui promiserunt ab unoquoque xx. solidos; sed in instanti inierunt consilium, et retraxerunt duodecim libras de duodecim militibus, dicentes, quod illi xii. debent adjuvare alios xl. et ad wardas faciendas et ad scutagia, similiter et ad auxilium abbatis. Quod cum abbas audisset, iratus est, et dixit familiaribus suis, quod, si posset vivere, redderet eis vicem pro vice et gravamen pro gravamine.

them. But if you will not agree to this, I will make complaint before the king and before the chief justiciar.”

When the abbot had so spoken, the matter was postponed. But afterwards a certain simple and foolish steward, by name Gilbert, was presented to him, and before he received him, the abbot said to his intimates, “If the ignorance of the steward leads to the ill-rendering of the justice of the king, then it will be he who will be responsible to the king and not I, for he gained the stewardship by hereditary right. For the time, therefore, I would rather accept him than another, even more incompetent, to my loss. By God’s help, I will be my own steward.”

When homage had been received, the abbot demanded an aid from the knights, and they promised twenty shillings from each fee of a knight. But they at once took counsel, and reduced the aid by twelve pounds from twelve knights, alleging that these twelve ought to assist the other forty to keep ward, and to make scutages, and also in assisting the abbey. When the abbot heard this, he was wroth, and said to his friends that should his life be spared, he would repay them like for like, and injury for injury.⁵²

Post hæc, per unumquodque manerium abbatiae fecit abbas inquire annuos census liberorum hominum, et nomina rusticorum, et eorum tenementa, et singulorum servitia, et in scriptum omnia redigi. Aulas autem veteres et domos confractas, per quas milvi et cornices volabant, reformavit; capellas novas ædificavit, et talamos et solia pluribus locis, ubi nunquam fuerunt ædificia, nisi horrea solummodo.

Plures etiam parcos fecit, quos bestiis replevit, venatorem cum canibus habens; et, superveniente aliquo hospite magni nominis, sedebat cum monachis suis in aliquo saltu nemoris, et videbat aliquando canes currere; sed de venatione nunquam vidi eum gustare.

Plura etiam assartavit et in agriculturam reduxit; in omnibus utilitati abbatiæ prospiciens: sed utinam super maneriis conventus commendandis consimili studio vigilaret! Maneria tamen nostra de Bradefeld et Rutham recepit ad tempus in manu sua, implens defectus firmarum per expensam xl. librarum, quæ postea resignavit nobis, audito quod murmur erat in conventu

After this, the abbot caused inquest to be made in every manor belonging to the abbacy as to the annual revenues of the free men, and the names of the villeins, and their holdings, and the services due from each, and caused all these details to be written down. Then he restored the old halls and ruined houses, through which kites and crows flew; he built new chapels, and rooms and seats in many places where there had never been buildings, save perhaps barns.

He also made many parks, which he filled with beasts, and had a huntsman and dogs. And whenever any important guest arrived, he used to sit with his monks in some retired grove, and watch the coursing for a while; but I never saw him interested in hunting.

He made many clearings and brought land into cultivation, in everything regarding the advantage of the abbacy. But would that he had watched with equal care over the grants of the manors of the monastery. For he received our manors of Bradfield and Rougham for a while into his own hand, making good the loss of rent by the expenditure of forty pounds, which he afterwards handed over to us when he

⁵²For the way in which this threat was carried out, see text, p. 104.

ex hoc quod maneria nostra tenuit in manu sua.

Eisdem etiam maneriis et omnibus aliis regendis, tam monachos quam laicos sapientiores prioribus custodibus constituit, qui et nobis et terris nostris consultius providerent.

Octo etiam hundredos[†] in manu sua, et post mortem Roberti de Cokefeld recepit hundredum de Cosford, quos omnes servantibus suis de mensa sua custodiendos tradidit; quæ majoris quæstionis erant ad se referens, et quæ minoris per alios terminans, et singula ad suum commodum retorquens.

Facta, eo iubente, descriptio generalis per hundredos de letis et sectis, de hidagiis et fodercorn, de gallinis reddendis, et aliis consuetudinibus et redditibus et exitibus, qui in magna parte semper celati fuerant per firmarios, et omnia redegit in scriptum, ita quod, infra iiij^{or} annos ab electione sua, non erat qui posset eum decipere de redditibus abbatiae ad valentiam unius denarii, cum de abbatia custo-

heard that the monastery murmured because he held our manors in his own hands.

For the management of the same manors and for the management of all other affairs, he appointed monks and laymen who were wiser than those who had previously held the posts, and who made careful provision for us and our lands.

Then he received eight hundreds into his own hands, and when Robert de Cokefield died, he took the hundred of Cosford. All these he handed over to the care of the servants of his own table. Matters of greater moment were kept for his own decision, and those which were of less import were decided by his agents; all things he turned to his advantage.

By his command, a general account was drawn up for every hundred of the leets and suits, of the hidages and customary supplies of fodder, of the hens which ought to be paid to him, and of all the other customary dues, revenues, and expenses, which the tenants had always concealed to a great extent. All these things he reduced to writing, so that within four years of his election, no one could deceive him as

[†]"Tenuit" desiderari videtur. (Roke.)

dienda nullum scriptum a predecesso-
ribus suis recepisset, nisi schedulam
parvam, qua continebantur nomina
militum Sancti Eadmundi et nomi-
na maneriorum, et quæ firma quam
firmam sequi deberet. Hunc autem
librum vocavit Kalendarium suum,
quo etiam inscribebantur singula de-
bita quæ adquietaverat; quem librum
fere quotidie inspexit, tanquam ibi
consideraret vultum probitatis suæ in
speculo.

*Of that which was done at
the abbot's first chapter.*

Prima die qua
tenuit capitulum, confirma-
vit nobis novo sigillo suo lx. solidos de
Suthreia, quos prædecessores sui in-
juste receperant primo ab Eadmund, a
aureo monacho dicto, ut posset tene-
re eandem villam ad firmam omnibus
diebus vitæ suæ.

Et proposuit edictum ut nullus de cæ-
tero ornamenta ecclesiæ invadiaret si-
ne assensu conventus, sicut solebat fie-
ri, nec aliqua carta sigillaretur sigillo
conventus nisi in capitulo coram con-
ventu;

to the resources of the abbey even to
a penny's value, whereas he had recei-
ved nothing in writing from his prede-
cessors concerning the management
of the abbey, except a little schedule
containing the names of the knights
of St. Edmund and the names of the
manors, and the rent which attached
to each farm. Now he called this book
of his his Calendar,⁵³ in the which also
were written down all the debts whi-
ch he had paid. And he consulted this
book almost daily, as if in it he saw the
image of his probity as in a glass.

On the first day on the which he held a
chapter, he confirmed to us under his
new seal the sixty shillings for South-
rey, which his predecessors had in the
first instance unjustly received from
Edmund, called the golden monk, that
the same might hold the said township
to farm all the days of his life.

And he proposed an edict that no one
should pledge the ornaments of the
church henceforth without the assent
of the monastery, as had been done for-
merly. He proposed also that no char-
ter should be sealed with the seal of
the monastery save in the chapter and
in the presence of the whole commu-

⁵³Rokewode (p. 121) mentions a transcript of the Calendar which was in a copy of the *Liber de Consuetudinibus S. Edmundi* in his possession.

nity.

et fecit Hugonem subsacristam, statuens ut Willelmus sacrista nichil omnino ageret de sacristia, nec in receptis nec in expensis, nisi per assensum ejus. Posthæc, sed non eodem die, antiquos custodes oblationum transtulit ad alia officia. Postremo ipsum W. deposuit; unde quidam diligentes Willelmum dicebant: "Ecce abbas! ecce lupus de quo somnium est! ecce qualiter sævit."

*How certain men wished to
conspire against the abbot.*

et voluerunt facere quidam conspirationem contra abbatem. Quod cum abbati revelatum esset, volens nec omnino tacere nec conventum turbare, intrauit capitulum in crastino, extrahens sacculum plenum cartis cancellatis adhuc sigillis pendentibus, scilicet, prædecessoris sui, et partim prioris, partim sacristæ, partim camerarii, et aliorum officialium, quarum summa erat trium millium librarum et lii., et una marca, de pura sorte, præter usuram quæ excreverat, cujus magnitudo nunquam sciri poterat: de quibus omnibus pacem fecerat infra annum post electionem suam, et infra xii. annos omnia adquietavit.

Then he made Hugh sub-sacristan, ordaining that William the sacristan should do nothing in the office of sacristan, either as to receipts or as to expenses, save by his assent. Afterwards, but on the same day, he removed the former custodians of the oblations to other offices. And last of all he deposed William himself, whereupon certain who loved William said, "See the abbot! See the wolf of whom one dreamed! See how he ravens!"

Then some wished to conspire against the abbot. And when this was revealed to the abbot, as he wished neither to keep silence altogether nor to disturb the monastery, he entered the chapter on the morrow. And there he drew forth a small bag full of cancelled bonds, to which the seals were still attached, some of which were those of his predecessor, some of the prior, some of the sacristan, some of the chamberlain, and some of other officials. Of these the total was three thousand two score and twelve pounds, and one pure mark, over and above the increase due to usury, the amount of which none could know; and for all these he had made some arrangement within a year of his election, and within twelve

years he had paid them in full.

“Ecce,” inquit, “sapientia sacristæ nostri Willelmi! Ecce tot cartæ sigillo ejus signatæ, cum quibus impignoraverat cappas sericas, dalmaticas, turibula argenti, et textus aureos, sine conventu, quæ omnia adquietavi et vobis reconsignavi.” et multa alia adjecit, ostendens quare deposuerat W.; præcipuam tamen causam subticuit, nolens eum scandalizare.

And he said, “Observe the wisdom of our sacristan, William! See the number of bonds marked with his seal, in which he has pledged silken caps, dalmatics, silver vases, and books of the gospels bound in gold, without the assent of the monastery. And all these things I have settled and restored to you.” And he added many other words, showing wherefore he had deposited William. But on the principal cause he kept silence, not wishing to make him a public example.

Et cum substituisset Samsonem cantorem, nobis omnibus placentem et omni exceptione majorem, in pace facta sunt omnia. Abbas vero domos sacristæ in cimiterio funditus præcepit erui, tanquam non essent dignæ stare super terram, propter frequentes bibationes et quædam tacenda, quæ nolens et dolens viderat quando fuit subsacrista; et ita omnia complanari fecit, quod infra annum, ubi steterat nobile ædificium, vidimus fabas pullulare, et ubi jacuerant dolia vini, urticas abundare.

And all things became peaceful once more when he had replaced William with the precentor Samson, who was a man pleasing to all of us, and well known to be without fault. But the abbot ordered that the houses of the sacristan in the graveyard should be utterly destroyed, as if they were unworthy to stand above ground. And for this the cause was the frequent drinking bouts and certain things which cannot be mentioned, which he had seen when he was sub-sacristan with sorrow and pain. So he caused all the buildings to be levelled with the ground, and within a year, where there had stood a noble building we saw beans growing, and where casks of wine had lain we saw nettles in abundan-

ce.

*How the abbot journeyed
through the lands of Saint
Edmund, and how he
escaped death at Warkton.*

Post clausum Paschæ ivit abbas per singula maneria sua et nostra, et per illa quæ confirmavimus in feudum firmariis, poscens ab omnibus et a singulis auxilium et recognitionem secundum consuetudinem regni; quotidie sæculari scientia proficiens, et ad exteriora negotia discenda et promovenda animum convertens.

Cum autem venisset apud Werketunam, et nocte dormisset, venit ei vox, dicens: "Samson, surge velociter," et iterum, "Surge, nimis moraris;" et surgens stupefactus, circumquaque respexit, et vidit lumen in domo necessaria, candelam scilicet, paratam cadere super stramen, quam Reinerus monachus ibi per incuriam reliquerat. Quam cum abbas extinxisset pergens per domum percepit ostium, quod unicum erat, ita obseratum quod aperiri non potuit nisi per clavem, et fenestras strictas, ita quod, si ignis excrevisset, ipse et omnes sui qui in solio illo dormierant extincti essent; quia non erat locus ubi exire vel quo effugere possent.

Post clausum
Paschæ ivit ab-
bas per singu-
la maneria sua

After the end of Easter the abbot went through all his manors and ours, and through those which we had confirmed in fee to tenants. And from all and sundry he demanded an aid and recognition, according to the custom of the realm. Daily he grew skilled in earthly learning, and turned his attention to the acquisition of knowledge of external affairs and of providing for them.

But when he was come to Warkton and was at night sleeping, a voice came to him saying, "Samson, arise up quickly,"⁵⁴ and again, "Rise, thou tarriest too long." So he arose half dazed, and looking round about him saw in a necessary place a light, a candle which Reiner the monk had left there through carelessness, and which was about to fall on the straw. And when the abbot had put it out, he went through the house and found the door—for there was but one—so fastened that it could only be opened with a key, and the windows barred. Wherefore, had the fire grown, both he and all they who were sleeping in that building would have perished. For there was no way by which they might have gone out or escaped.

*How the creditors of the
abbey demanded payment,
and how the abbot took his
manors into his own hand.*

tam Judei quam Christiani exigentes debita, turbantes et anxiantes eum, ita quod somnum amittebat, pallidus et macilentus effectus, et dicens, quod “nunquam cor meum quietum erit, donec finem debiti mei sciero.”

Veniente festo sancti Michaelis, omnia maneria sua in manu sua recepit cum parvis admodum implementis et paucis instauramentis; Waltero de Hatfeld condonavit xix. libras de firmis præteritis, ut libere reciperet ⁱⁱⁱ^{or} maneria quæ abbas H. ei confirmaverat tenenda, scilicet Haregrava et Saxham et Cheventona et Stapelford;

*How the abbot did not then
take Harlow into his own
hand.*

Cum forte transitum faceremus in redeundo de Lundonia per forestam, domino abbate audiente, quæsi vi a vetula transeunte cujus hoc nemus esset, et de qua villa, et quis dominus, vel quis custos? et respondit, quia nemus erat abbatis Sancti Eadmundi, de villa de Herlava, et quod Arnal-

Quocunque
ibat abbas,
tunc temporis,
occurrerant

Herlavam au-
tem distulit
abbas recipere
hac occasione.

Now at that time, wheresoever the abbot went, there hastened to him both Jews and Christians demanding payment of the debts due to them. And they so disturbed the abbot, and caused him such anxiety, that he lost his sleep, and grew pale and thin. Then he said, “There will be no rest for my soul until I shall see an end of my indebtedness.”

When Michaelmas came, he took all his manors into his hand, with very few necessary implements and but little stock. He forgave Walter de Hatfield nineteen pounds of arrears of rent, in return for receiving from him the four manors in the which he had been confirmed as tenant by abbot Hugh, namely, Hargrave, Saxham, Chevington and Stapelford.

But the abbot delayed to receive Harlow, and for this cause. It chanced that once when we were returning from London through the forest, that in the hearing of the lord abbot I asked an old woman who passed us whose this wood was, and to what township it belonged, and who was its lord or who was warden over it. And she answered that it was a wood of the abbot of St. Edmund, of the township of Harlow, and that one called Arnald was

⁵⁴Acts xxii., 7.

dus dictus esset custos ejus. De quo cum quærerem, qualiter se haberet versus homines villæ, respondit, quia demon vivus fuerat, inimicus Dei et excoriator rusticorum; sed timet modo novum abbatem Sancti Eadmundi, quem sapientem et cautelem credit esse, et ideo tractat homines pacifice. Quo audito, factus est abbas hilaris, et manerium recipere distulit ad tempus.

*How the abbot managed
the lands which he farmed
himself.*

Ex insperato venit tunc temporis rumor de morte uxoris Herlewini de Rung, quæ cartam ad tenendam eandem villam in vita sua habebat; et dixit abbas: “Heri dedissem lx. marcas ad liberandum illud manerium; modo liberavit illud Dominus.” Cumque sine omni dilatione illuc venisset et recepisset villam in manu sua, et in crastino isset Tilleneriam, membrum illius manerii, venit quidam miles offerens xxx. marcas, ut posset tenere illam carucatam terræ cum pertinentiis per antiquum servitium, scilicet iiij. libras; quod noluit abbas; et habuit inde illo anno xxv. libras, secundo anno xx. libras.

warden of it. And when I asked concerning him as to how he bore himself towards the men of the township, she answered that he had been a fiend incarnate, an enemy of God, and one who evil-intreated the poor. But now, she said, he fears the new abbot of St. Edmund, whom he believes to be wise and provident, and therefore treats his men well. And when he heard this the abbot was rejoiced, and delayed for a season to take that manor into his own hand.

Then there came the unexpected news of the death of the wife of Herlewin of Rungton. She held a charter by which she was to have that township for her life, and the abbot said, “Yesterday I would have given sixty marks to free that manor, now the Lord has freed it.” Then when he had come and had received the township into his hand without any delay, and on the morrow had gone to Tilleney which was a part of that manor, there came to him a certain knight offering thirty marks that he might hold that carucate of land with what belonged to it on the same terms as before, namely, four pounds a year. This the abbot refused, and he took thence that year five and twenty pounds, and in the next year twenty pounds.

Hæc et consimilia fecerunt eum omnia tenere in manu sua; scilicet quod alibi legitur: “Omnia Cæsar erat.”† Ille vero non segniter agens, horrea et boverias ædificare cœpit in primis; ad wainandas terras super omnia excolendas sollicitus, et ad boscos custodiendos vigilans, super quibus dandis vel minuendis ipse seipsum profitebatur avarum.

Unum solum manerium de Torp carta sua confirmavit cuidam Anglico natione, glebæ ascripto, de cujus fidelitate plenius confidebat quia bonus agricola erat, et quia nesciebat loqui Gallice.

*How abbot Samson was
made a justice, and how he
bore himself in this office.
A.D. 1182, November.*

suam, et ecce! offerebantur ei literæ domini papæ constituentes eum iudicem de causis cognoscendis, ad quæ exequenda rudis fuit et inexercitatus, licet liberalibus artibus et scripturis divinis imbutus esset, utpote vir literatus, in scholis nutritus, et rector scholarum in sua provincia notus et approbatus. Vocavit proinde duos clericos legis peritos, et sibi associavit, quorum consilio utebatur in ecclesiasticis negotiis, decretis et decretalibus

This and other similar events led him to keep all things in his hand; as it is written in another place, “Cæsar was everything.” Nor was he slack, but caused first of all barns and cattlesheds to be built; he was anxious to cultivate the plough lands above all things; he was careful in maintaining the woods, and in giving and reducing these he made great profit for himself.

The one manor of Thorp alone he confirmed under his charter to a certain Englishman, a man adscript to the soil, in whose fidelity he had the fullest confidence, because he was a good farmer and because he knew no French.

Nondum transierant vii. menses post electionem

Seven months had not yet passed since his election, and, behold! letters of the lord pope were sent to him appointing him a judge for hearing causes. In the performance of this work he was rude and inexperienced, though he was skilled in the liberal arts and in the holy scriptures, as being a literate man, brought up in the schools and a ruler of scholars, and renowned and well proved in his own work. He therefore associated with himself two clerks who were learned in the law and joined them with him, using their advice in church matters, while he spent his leisure in studying the

† Lucan Phars. iii., 108.

epistolis operam præbens, cum hora dabatur; ita quod infra breve tempus, tum librorum inspectione, tum causarum exercitio, iudex discretus haberetur, secundum formam juris in jure procedens. Unde quidam ait, "Maledicta sit curia istius abbatis, ubi nec aurum nec argentum mihi prodest ad confundendum adversarium meum!"

Processu temporis, in causis sæcularibus aliquantulum exercitatus, naturali ratione ductus, tam subtilis ingenii erat quod omnes mirabantur, et ab Osberto filio Hervei subvicecomite dicebatur: "Iste abbas disputator est; si procedit sicut incipit, nos omnes excæcabit quotquot sumus." Abbas vero in hujusmodi causis approbatus, factus est justiciarius errans, sed ab errore et devio se custodiens. Verum "summa petit livor."[†] Cum homines sui conquererentur ei in curia Sancti Ædmundi, quia nolebat præcipitare sententiam nec credere omni spiritui, sed ordine judicio procedere, sciens quod merita causarum partium assertionem panduntur, dicebatur quod nolebat facere justitiam alicui conquerenti, nisi intervenitu pecuniæ datæ vel promissæ; et quia erat ei aspectus acutus et pene-

decrees and decretal letters. And the result was that in a little while he was regarded as a discreet judge, by reason of the books which he had read and the causes which he had tried, and as one who proceeded in the cases which he tried according to the form of law. And for this cause one said, "Cursed be the court of this abbot, where neither gold nor silver profit me to confound my enemy!"

In course of time, he became somewhat skilled in temporal matters, being guided by his commonsense, for his mind was so subtle that all men wondered, and Osbert FitzHerbert, the under-sheriff, used to say, "This abbot is given to disputation; if he goes on as he has begun, he will blind us all, however many we be." But the abbot, being approved in these matters, was made a justice in eyre, though he kept himself from error and wandering. But "envy seeks out the highest." His men complained to him in the court of St. Edmund since he would not give judgment hastily or believe every spirit,⁵⁵ but proceeded in a judicial manner, knowing that the merits of the cases of suitors are made clear by discussion. It was said that he would not do justice to any complainant, un-

[†] Ovid. Rem. Am. 369.

⁵⁵ I. John iv., 1.

trans, et frons Catonis, raro blandiens, dicebatur magis declinare animum severitati quam benignitati; et, in misericordiis accipiendis pro aliqua forisfactura, dicebatur iudicium superexaltare misericordiam, quia, sicut visum fuit pluribus, cum perventum erat ad denarios capiendos, raro remittebat quod juste accipi potuit.

less money were given or promised; and because his aspect was acute and penetrating, and his face, like Cato's, rarely smiling, it was said that his mind lent rather to severity than to mercy. Moreover, when he took fines for any crime, it was said that judgment rejoiced against mercy,⁵⁶ for in the opinion of many, when it came to a matter of taking money, he rarely remitted that which he might lawfully take.

Sicut profecit sapientia, ita et providentia in rebus custodiendis et augendis et in expensis honorifice faciendis;

So his wisdom increased, as well as his care in managing affairs, and in improving his state, and in spending honourably.

*How some men made
complaint against the
abbot.*

sed ed hic multi detractores oblectaverunt, dicentes, quia accepit de sacristia quod voluit, propriis parcens denariis, permittens bladum suum jacere usque ad tempus caræ venditionis, et jacens ad maneria sua aliter quam prædecessores sui, onerans celerarium hospitibus ab abbate potius suscipiendis, per quod abbas posset dici sapiens et instauratus et providus in fine anni; conventus vero et obedientiales inscii et improvidi haberentur.

sed ed hic multi detractores oblectaverunt, dicentes, quia

But hereupon many of his adversaries raised objections. For they said that he received what he would from the sacristy, and spared his own money, and allowed his corn to lie in the barns until such time as the price should be high. They said that he managed his manors in a way different from that of his predecessors; that he burdened his cellarer with guests who should rather have been received by the abbot, so that the abbot might win repute as a wise man and one who was clever and provident at the end of the year, but the monastery and its officials be thought ignorant and wasteful.

Ad has detractationes solebam respondere, quod si de sacristia aliquid accipit, ad utilitatem ecclesiæ illud convertit; et hoc nullus invidus negare potuit. Et, ut verum fatear, multo maiora et plura bona fuerunt patrata ex oblationibus sacristiæ, infra xv. annos post electionem suam, quam quadraginta annis ante.

Aliis objectionibus, quod abbas jacebat ad maneria sua, respondere solebam et excusabam dicens, quia abbas magis est lætus et hilaris alibi quam domi; et hoc utique verum fuit, vel propter conquærentium multitudinem qui occurrebant, vel propter rumorum relatores, unde sæpius contigit quod, propter exhibitionem rigidi vultus sui, ab hospitibus suis multum perdidit favoris et gratiæ, licet eis in cibo et potu satisfecerit.

How the author talked with the abbot concerning the sadness of his manner.

ei a secretis dixi: “Duo sunt quæ multum miror de vobis;” et cum quæsisset quæ duo: “Unum est, quod adhuc in tali statu fovetis sententiam Melu-

To these charges I used to answer that if he took anything from the sacristy, he employed it for the use of the church; and that no envious person could deny this. And to speak the truth, much more good and much greater good was done with the offerings of the sacristy during the fifteen years after his election than in the forty years preceding.

To the others who objected that the abbot went often to his manors, I was wont to answer and to excuse him by saying that the abbot was happier and in better spirits anywhere than at home. This also was the truth, whether on account of the constant complaints which came to him, or on account of those who told him rumours concerning himself. Accordingly, it often happened that his appearance was stern, and that so he lost much favour and grace with the guests, though he satisfied them with food and drink.

But I noticed this, and taking a favourable occasion, as I was with him alone, said, “There are two things in you which make me marvel greatly.” And when he asked what they were, I said, “One is, that you, in the circumstances in which you are placed, favour the opinion of those of Melun⁵⁷ who say

⁵⁶Cp. James ii., 13.

nensium, dicentium ex falso nichil sequi, et cætera frivola." Quibus cum ipse respondisset quod voluit, adjeci ego: "Aliud nimirum est quod domini non exhibetis vultum propitium sicut alibi, nec inter fratres[†] qui vos diligunt et dilexerunt et in dominum sibi elegerunt, sed raro estis inter eos, nec tunc congaudetis eis, sicut dicunt."

that from a false premiss nothing can follow, and other foolish things." And when he answered what he would to this, I added, "The other thing at which I marvel is that you do not show a smiling face at home as you do elsewhere, nor remain among the brothers who cherish you, and love you, and have chosen you to be their lord, but are rarely with them, nor do you then rejoice with them, so they say."

Quibus auditis, vultum mutavit, et demisso capite respondit: "Stultus es et stulte loqueris. Scire deberes quod Salomon ait: Filiæ tibi sunt multæ: vultum propitium ne ostendas eis." Ego vero tacui, de cetero ponens custodiam ori meo.

When he heard this, his expression changed, and he answered, with bowed head, "You are a fool, and speak as a fool. You should know the saying of Solomon, Hast thou many daughters; show not thyself cheerful toward them." Then I was silent, and from that time placed a guard on my lips.

Alia tamen vice dixi: "Domine, audi vi te in hac nocte post matutinas vigilantem et valde suspirantem contra morem solitum." Qui respondit: "Non est mirum; particeps es bonorum meorum in cibo et potu, et equitaturis, et similibus, sed parum cogitas de procuratione domus et familiæ, de variis et arduis negotiis curæ pastoralis, quæ me sollicitant, quæ animum meum gementem et anxium faciunt." Quibus respondi, elevatis manibus ad cælum:

Yet on another occasion I said, "Lord, I heard you this night keeping watch after matins and breathing heavily contrary to your wont." And he answered, "It is not strange. You share my good things, food, and drink, and riding, and the like. But you think little of the toil of providing for the house and household, of the many and arduous labours which are a pastor's care. These make me anxious, and cause me to groan and to be troubled in spirit." Thereupon I

⁵⁷ Peter Abelard founded a school of dialectic at Melun.

[†] "Manetis" desiderari videtur. (Roke.)

“Talem anxietatem[†] mihi, omnipotens et misericors Dominus.”

Audiui abbatem dicentem, quod si fuisset in eo statu quo fuit antequam monacharetur, et habuisset v. vel sex marcas redditus cum quibus sustentari possit in scholis, nunquam fieret monachus nec abbas. Alia vice dixit cum iuramento, quod, si præsvisisset quæ et quanta esset sollicitudo abbatiæ custodiendæ, libentius voluisset fieri magister almarii et custos librorum, quam abbas et dominus. Illam utique obedientiam dixit præ omnibus aliis se semper desiderasse. Et quis talia crederet? Vix ego; nec etiam ego, nisi quia, cum eo vi. annis existens die ac nocte, vitæ scilicet meritum et sapientiæ doctrinam plenius agnoscerem.

Concerning a dream which the abbot had when a boy.

Narravit aliquando, quod, cum esset puer ix. annorum, somniavit se stare præ foribus cimiterii ecclesiæ Sancti Eadmundi, et diabolus expansis ulnis velle eum capere; sed sanctus Eadmundus, prope astans, recepit eum in brachiis suis; cumque clamaret somniando, “Sancte Ædmonde,

raised my hands to heaven and answered, “From so great anxiety, almighty and merciful Lord, deliver me!”

I heard the abbot say that if he were in that condition in which he had been before he became a monk, and had five or six marks income wherewith he might support himself in the schools, he would never become either monk or abbot. And on another occasion, he said with an oath that had he known beforehand what care there was in ruling an abbey, and how great that care was, he would far rather have been almoner or librarian, than abbot and lord. And he declared that he had ever longed for the post of librarian above all others. Yet who would believe such things? Not I; no, not I; but that as I lived with him day and night for six years, I know fully the merit of his life and the wisdom of his mind.

Once he told me how when he was a boy of nine years, he dreamed that he stood before the doors of the cemetery of St. Edmund, and that the devil wished to seize him with his outstretched arms. But the blessed Edmund, who stood near, received him into his arms; and when he had cried out in his sleep, “St. Edmund, help me!” though he had never heard the saint named

[†]“Aufur” desideratur (Roke.).

adjuva me,” quem nunquam prius audierat nominari, expergefactus est. Mater vero ejus de tanto et tali clamore obstupuit, quæ, audito somnio, duxit eum ad sanctum Eadmundum orationis gratia; cumque venissent ad portam cimiterii, dixit, “Mater mea, ecce locus! ecce eadem porta, quam in somnis vidi, quando diabolus volebat me accipere:” et cognovit locum, ut aiebat, ac si prius eum carnalibus oculis vidisset.

Abbas ipse exposuit somnium; significans per diabolum voluptatem hujus seculi quæ eum volebat allicere, sed sanctus Eadmundus eum amplexatus est, quando eum monachum ecclesiæ suæ fieri voluit.

*How the abbot restrained
his temper that he might
not offend.*

Quidam de conventu murmurassent de quodam facto ejus, dixit mihi assidenti: “Deus, Deus,” inquit ille, “multum expedit mihi memorare somnium illud quod somniatum est de me antequam fierem abbas, scilicet quod sævirem ut lupus. Certe hoc est quod super omnia mundana timeo, ne conventus meus aliquid faciat, unde me sævire oporteat; sed ita est, cum

before, he awoke. Then his mother was amazed at his loud cry and at his words. And when she had heard the dream, she took him to St. Edmund’s, that he might pray there. So coming to the gate of the cemetery, he said, “Mother mine! see this place! See, the very door which I beheld in my dreams, when the devil would have taken me.” And he knew the place, he said, as if he had already seen it with his carnal eye.

The abbot himself explained the dream, saying that the devil in it meant the joys of this world which would have enticed him; but that the blessed Edmund embraced him, since he would have him become a monk of his church.

Once when it was told him that certain of those in the monastery murmured on account of some act of his, he said to me, as I was near him, “God, God, it is most expedient that I should be mindful of that dream which was dreamed concerning me before I became abbot, to the effect that I should raven as a wolf. Of a truth, I fear this above all earthly things, that my house may do something which may make it lawful for me to raven. But so it is, that when they say or do aught against my will, I call to mind that dream, and though I

dicunt vel agunt aliquid contra voluntatem meam; recolo illud somnium, et licet sæviam in animo meo, occulte fremens et frendens, vim mihi facio ne sæviam verbo vel opere: et,

Strangulat inclusus dolor et cor
æstuat intus.”[†]

Cum autem esset colericus naturaliter, et facile accenderetur ad iram, iram tamen ratione dignitatis cum magna lucta animi refrænabat sæpius. De qua etiam re aliquando se jactitabat dicens: “Hoc et illud vidi, hoc et illud audiui, et tamen patienter sustinui.”

*How the abbot forbade
secret accusations, and how
he ordered the restoration
of all private seals.*

verba quibus videbatur efficaciter venari favorem conventus. “Nolo,” inquit, “ut aliquis veniat ad me ad accusandum alium, nisi palam idem dicere voluerit; quod si aliquis aliter fecerit, nomen accusantis palam manifestabo. Volo etiam ut quilibet claustralis liberum habeat accessum ad me, ut mecum loquatur de necessitate sua quando voluerit.” Illud autem dixit quia magnates nostri, tempore H. abbatis, volentes nichil agi in monaste-

raven in spirit, groaning and gnashing my teeth in secret, I put force on myself that I may raven neither in word nor in deed. And hidden grief chokes me, and my heart burns within me.”

But though he was naturally choleric and easily moved to wrath, yet from respect for his office he generally restrained his anger, albeit with much grief of mind. Of this also he often spoke, saying, “I have seen this and that, I have heard this and that, and yet have I borne it patiently.”

Once as he sat in the chapter, the abbot spoke certain words whereby he seemed to court the favour of the monastery with success. “I will not,” he said, “that any come to me to accuse other, unless he will declare the same openly. But if any desire to act otherwise, I will publicly announce the name of the accuser. And I will also that every monk shall have free access to me, that he may talk with me of his needs when he will.” Now this he said because the chief men of our house in the days of abbot Hugh, wishing nothing to be done in the monastery save through them, decreed that no cloistered

[†]Ovid. Trist. v. 1, 63.

rio nisi per eos, decreverunt nullum monachum claustralem debere loqui cum abbate, nisi prius ostenderet capellano abbatis quid et de qua re vellet loqui cum abbate.

Quodam die iussit in capitulo, ut quicumque sigillum proprium haberet, ei redderet; et ita factum est, et inventa sunt triginta tria sigilla. Rationem hujus præcepti ipse ostendit, prohibens ne aliquis officialis appruntaret aliquod debitum ultra xx. solidos, sine assensu prioris et conventus, sicut solebat fieri. Priori vero et sacristæ reddidit sigilla sua, et cætera retinuit.

Concerning further regulations which the abbot made.

Alia die, iussit sibi dari omnes claves ci-starum et almariorum et hanepariorum, prohibens ne de cetero aliquis haberet ci-stam nec aliquid obseratum, nisi per licentiam, nec alias aliquid possideret, nisi quod regula permetteret. Cuilibet tamen nostrum generaliter dedit licentiam habendi denarios usque ad duos solidos, si forte nobis caritative darentur; ita tamen ut in pauperes parentes vel in pios usus expenderentur.

monk should speak with the abbot, unless he had first shown to the abbot's chaplain that which he desired to say to the abbot and the reason.

One day he commanded in the chapter that all who had seals of their own should restore them to him, and so it was done; and thirty and three seals were found. He himself clearly declared the reason for this command, and forbade any official to contract any debt above the sum of twenty shillings without the consent of the prior and monastery, as had been wont to be done in the past. Then he restored the prior and sacristan their seals and retained the others.

At another time he ordered that all the keys of the chests, cupboards, and hampers should be given up to him, and forbade anyone henceforth to have any chest or anything locked up, save by permission, or to possess anything of any description except such things as the rule allowed. However, he gave general permission to all of us to have money to the value of two shillings, if perchance this should be given to us in charity. The leave was still conditional on the money being expended for the benefit of poor relations or in pious uses.

Alia vice, dixit abbas se velle conservare antiquas consuetudines nostras de hospitibus suscipiendis; scilicet, quando abbas est domi, ipse recipiet omnes hospites cujuslibet conditionis, præter viros religiosos, et præter presbyteros sæcularis habitus, et præter eorum homines, qui per eos se advocaverunt ad portam curiæ; si vero abbas non fuerit domi, omnes hospites cujuslibet conditionis recipiuntur a celerario usque ad tredecim equos. Si vero laicus vel clericus venerit cum pluribus equis quam tredecim, recipiuntur a servientibus abbatis, vel intra curiam vel extra, ad expensas abbatis. Omnes viri religiosi, etiam episcopi, si ipsi forte fuerint monachi, pertinent ad celerarium et ad expensas conventus, nisi abbas voluerit eum honorare, et ad expensas suas in sua aula recipere.

*Concerning the appearance
and private character of the
abbot.*

calvus, vultum habens nec rotundum nec oblongum, naso eminente, labiis grossis, oculis cristallinis et penetrantibus intuitus, auribus clarissimi auditus,

Abbas Samson mediocris erat staturæ, fere omnino

On another occasion the abbot said that he wished to maintain our ancient custom in the matter of the reception of guests, so that when the abbot was at home he should receive all guests of whatever condition, except religious men, and except priests of secular habit, and except their men, who should come to the doors of the court by instruction of their masters. If, however, the abbot should not be at home, all guests of whatever condition should be received by the cellarer, up to the number of thirteen horses. But if a layman or clerk should come with more than thirteen horses, they should be received by the servants of the abbot, either within or without the court, at the expense of the abbot. All religious men, even bishops, if by chance they were monks, were to be the care of the cellarer and entertained at the expense of the monastery, unless the abbot were desirous of showing them honour and of receiving them in his hall at his own expense.

Abbot Samson was below the average height, almost bald; his face was neither round nor oblong; his nose was prominent and his lips thick; his eyes were clear and his glance penetrating; his hearing was excellent; his eyebrows arched, and frequently shaded; and a little cold soon made him

superciliis in altum crescentibus et sæpe tonsis; ex parvo frigore cito raucus; die electionis suæ quadraginta et septem annos ætatis habens, et in monachatu decem et septem annos;[†] paucos canos habens in rufa barba, et paucissimos inter capillos nigros, et aliquantulum crispis; sed infra xiiii^{or} annos post electionem suam totus albus efficitur sicut nix;

homo supersobrius, nunquam desidiosus, multum valens, et volens equitare vel pedes ire, donec senectus prævaluit, quæ talem voluntatem temperavit; qui, audito rumore de capta cruce et perditione Jerusalem, femoralibus cilicinis cœpit uti, et cilicio loco staminis, et carnibus et carneis abstinere; carnes tamen voluit sibi anteferri sedens ad mensam, ad augmentum scilicet elemosinæ. Lac dulce et mel et consimilia dulcia libentius quam cæteros cibos comedebat.

hoarse. On the day of his election he was forty-seven, and had been a monk for seventeen years.⁵⁸ In his ruddy beard there were a few grey hairs, and still fewer in his black and curling hair. But in the course of the first fourteen years after his election all his hair became white as snow.

He was an exceedingly temperate man; he possessed great energy and a strong constitution, and was fond both of riding and walking, until old age prevailed upon him and moderated his ardour in these respects. When he heard the news of the capture of the cross and the fall of Jerusalem,⁵⁹ he began to wear under garments made of horse hair, and a horse-hair shirt, and gave up the use of flesh and meat. None the less, he willed that flesh should be placed before him as he sat at table, that the alms might be increased. He ate sweet milk, honey, and similar sweet things, far more readily than any other food.

[†] This agrees sufficiently well with the statement of the unknown author of the MS., Harl. 447 (not John of Taxter, with whom Mr. Rokewode confounds him in his note on this passage), that Samson took the habit in 1166. If so, he was not a monk at the time of his mission to Rome during the schism of Octavian; *infra*, p. 252. This point has been discussed in the Introduction.

⁵⁸ The *Ann. St. Ed. (Mem. II., 5)* bear this out, as under 1166 there is an entry, "Abbot Samson was made a monk." (Cp. *Mem. I., xlv.*)

⁵⁹ Jerusalem was taken by Saladin on October 2nd, 1187.

Mendaces et ebriosos et verbosos odio habuit; quia virtus sese diligit, et aspernatur contrarium. Murmuratores cibi et potus, et præcipue monachos murmuratores condemnans, tenorem antiquum conservans quem olim habuit dum claustralis fuit; hoc autem virtutis in se habuit quod nunquam ferculum coram eo positum voluit mutare. Quod cum ego novicius vellem probare si hoc esset verum, forte servivi in refectorio, et cogitavi penes me ut ponerem coram eo ferculum quod omnibus aliis displiceret in disco nigerri-
mo et fracto. Quod cum ipse vidisset, tanquam non videns erat; facta autem mora, pœnituit me hoc fecisse, et statim, arrepto disco, ferculum et discum mutavi in melius et asportavi; ille vero emendationem talem moleste tulit, iratus et turbatus.

Homo erat eloquens, Gallice et Latine, magis ratione dicendorum quam ornatui verborum innitens. Scripturam Anglice scriptam legere novit elegantissime, et Anglice sermocinari solebat populo, sed secundum linguam Norfolchiæ, ubi natus et nutritus erat, unde et pulpitem iussit fieri in ecclesia et ad utilitatem audientium et ad decorem ecclesiæ.

He hated liars, drunkards, and talkative persons; for virtue ever loves itself and spurns that which is contrary to it. He blamed those who grumbled about their meat and drink, and especially monks who so grumbled, and personally kept to the same manners which he had observed when he was a cloistered monk. Moreover, he had this virtue in himself that he never desired to change the dish which was placed before him. When I was a novice, I wished to prove whether this was really true, and as I happened to serve in the refectory, I thought to place before him food which would have offended any other man, in a very dirty and broken dish. But when he saw this, he was as it were blind to it. Then, as there was some delay, I repented of what I had done, and straightway seized the dish, changed the food and dish for better, and carried it to him. He, however, was angry at the change, and disturbed.

He was an eloquent man, speaking both French and Latin, but rather careful of the good sense of that which he had to say than of the style of his words. He could read books written in English very well, and was wont to preach to the people in English, but in the dialect of Norfolk where he was born and bred. It was for this reason that he ordered a pulpit to be placed in the church.

ch, for the sake of those who heard him and for purposes of ornament.

Videbatur quoque abbas activam vitam magis diligere quam contemplativam, qui bonos obedientiales magis commendavit quam bonos claustrales; et raro aliquem propter solam scientiam literarum approbavit, nisi haberet scientiam rerum sæcularium; et cum audiret forte aliquem prælatum cedere oneri pastoralis et fieri anachoritam, in hoc eum non laudavit. Homines nimis benignos laudare noluit, dicens: "Qui omnibus placere nititur, nulli placere debet."

*How abbot Samson dealt
with flatterers.*

Primo ergo anno susceptæ abbatiae omnes adulescentes quasi odio habuit, et maxime monachos; sed in processu temporis videbatur eos quasi libentius audire et magis familiares habere. Unde contigit quod, cum quidam frater noster, hac arte peritus, curvasset genua ante eum, et sub obtentu consilii dandi auribus ejus adulationis oleum infudisset, subrisi ego stans a longe; eo vero recedente, vocatus et interrogatus quare riserim, respondi, mundum plenum esse adulatoribus.

The abbot further appeared to prefer the active to the contemplative life, and praised good officials more than good monks. He rarely commended anyone solely on account of his knowledge of letters, unless the man happened to have knowledge of secular affairs, and if he chanced to hear of any prelate who had given up his pastoral work and become a hermit, he did not praise him for this. He would not praise men who were too kindly, saying, "He who strives to please all men, deserves to please none."

Now in the first year of his abbacy he seemed to hate all flatterers, and especially those who were monks. But in course of time he appeared to listen to them with some willingness, and to treat them more graciously. Once a certain one of our brothers, who was skilled in this art, had bent his knees before him, and under pretence of giving him counsel, had poured the oil of flattery into his ears, while I stood at a distance and smiled. Then when the brother had gone, the abbot called me and asked me why I had been smiling, and I answered that the world was full of flatterers.

Et abbas; “Fili mi, diu est quod adula-
tores novi, et ideo non possum adula-
tores non audire. Multa sunt simulanda
et dissimulanda, ad pacem conventus
conservandam. Audiam eos loqui,
sed non decipient me, si possum, sicut
prædecessorem meum, qui consilio eorum
ita inconsulte credidit, quod diu
ante obitum suum nichil habuit quod
manducaret vel ipse vel familia sua,
nisi a creditoribus mutuo acceptum;
nec erat quod distribui potuit pauperibus
die sepulturæ ejus, nisi quinquaginta
solidos, qui recepti erant a Ricardo
firmario de Palegrava, hac occasione
quod eadem die intravit firmam de
Palegrava; quos denarios idem Ricardus
alia vice reddidit bailivis regis,
integram firmam exigentibus ad opus
regis.” His dictis confortatus fui.

*How abbot Samson
managed his household.*

Ille vero studuit disciplinam domum habere, et familiæ magnitudinem
sed necessariam, providens sibi quod firma
ebdomadæ, quæ prædecessori suo non
sufficiebat ad expensam v. dierum, ei
suffecit octo diebus, vel novem, vel decem,
si esset ad maneria

And the abbot said, “My son, I have
been flattered for a long while, and therefore
I cannot attend to flattery. There must
be much pretence and much concealment
that the peace of the monastery may be
preserved. I will hear them speak, but
they will not deceive me, if I can prevent
it, as they deceived my predecessor, who
gave such unconsidered attention to them
that for a long while before his death he
had nothing wherewith to feed himself
or his household, save that which he
borrowed from creditors. And on the day
of his burial there was nothing which could
be distributed among the poor, save fifty
shillings which were received from Richard
the tenant of Palgrave, because on the same
day he entered on the tenancy of Palgrave;
and this money the same Richard afterwards
paid again to the officials of the king, who
exacted the full rent for the royal use.”
And with these words I was reassured.

He laboured to secure a well regulated
house, and a household large, but not
larger than was right, and he took care
that the weekly allowance which in the
time of his predecessor had not been
enough for five days, should last him
for eight days, or nine, or ten, if he
were on his manors and there were no
great coming of guests. Every week,

sua sine magno adventu hospitum. Singulis vero ebdomadis, computationem expensæ suæ domus audiebat, non per vicarium, sed in propria persona, quod antecessor ejus nunquam solebat facere.

Septem annis primis quatuor fercula[†] in domo sua, postea nisia[‡] tria, præter xenia et præter venationem de parcis suis, vel pisces de vivariis suis. Et si forte aliquem retinuit ad tempus in domo sua prece alicujus potentis vel alicujus familiaris, vel nuncios, vel citharædos, vel aliquem hujusmodi, nacta opportunitate transfretandi vel longe eundi, a talibus superfluis se prudenter exoneravit.

*How the abbot treated
those monks with whom he
had been intimate before he
became abbot.*

susceptam magis dilectos et magis familiares, raro promovit ad obedientias occasione pristinæ familiaritatis, nisi essent idonei; unde quidam ex nostris, qui ei erant propitii ad eligendum eum abbatem, dixerunt eum minus quam deceret diligere eos, qui eum antequam fuerat abbas dilexerant, et eos plus ab eo amari, qui eum et aperte

moreover, he audited the expenses of his house, not through an agent, but in person, a thing which his predecessor had never been accustomed to do.

For his first seven years he had four dishes in his house, afterwards only three, if one excludes presents, and game from his parks and fish from his ponds. And if he happened to keep anyone for a while in his house at the request of some great man or of one of his friends, or messengers, or minstrels, or any such person, he used to take any opportunity of crossing the sea or going a long journey, and so prudently freed himself from so great expense.

Monachos vero, quos socios abbas habuit ante abbatiam

Those monks whom the abbot, before he acquired the abbacy, had treated as his most cherished and intimate friends, he seldom raised to official positions on the score of his former intimacy with them, unless they were fit persons. Therefore some of our number, who had favoured his election as abbot, said that he showed them less favour than was their due, who had loved him before he was abbot, and that those rather were cherished by him who had slandered him both openly

[†]“Sumpsit” desiderari videtur.

[‡]= *non nisi*.

et occulte depravaverunt, et eum hominem iracundum, non socialem, paltenarium et baratorem de Norfolch, etiam in audientia multorum, publice nominaverunt. Verum, sicut ille pristinis amicis suis nihil amoris vel honoris indiscrete exhibuit post susceptionem abbatiae sic et pluribus aliis pro meritis suis nichil rancoris vel odii exhibuit, bonum aliquando reddens pro malo, et benefaciens persequentibus eum.

Habuit etiam in consuetudine quiddam quod nunquam vidi hominem habere, scilicet quod multos affectuose dilexit, quibus nunquam vel raro vulum amoris exhibuit; hoc quod vulgus clamat, dicens, "Ubi amor ibi oculus." Et aliud mirum fuit, quod damnum suum in temporalibus a servientibus suis scienter sustinuit, et se sustinere confessus est: sed, sicut credo, hoc fuit in causa, ut congruum tempus expectaret quo rem consultius emendaret, vel ut majus damnum dissimulando evitaret.

How the abbot treated his relations.

Parentes suos mediocriter dilexit, nec mi-

and secretly, and in the hearing of many had publicly declared him to be a hot-tempered man, one who was unsociable, conceited, and a Norfolk cheat. But, just as after he received the abbacy he made no injudicious exhibition of affection or of a desire to honour his former friends, so also he did not show towards the others any of that rancour or hatred which they deserved, returning good for evil on many occasions, and doing good to those who persecuted him.

He had also a characteristic which I have never seen in any other man, namely, that he had a strong affection for many to whom he never or seldom showed a loving face, which the common saying declares to be usual, when it says, "Where love is, there the glance follows." And there was another noteworthy thing, that he wittingly suffered loss from his servants in temporal matters, and allowed that he suffered it; but, as I believe, the reason for this was that he waited for a fit season when the matter might be conveniently remedied, or that by concealing his knowledge he might avoid greater loss.

For his relations he displayed moderate affection, but yet no less tender than that which others are wont to show,

nus vero tenere sicut alii solent; quia nullum infra tertium gradum habuit, vel habere simulavit. Sed audiui eum dicentem quod habuit parentes nobiles et generosos, quos nunquam imperpetuum ut parentes cognosceret; quia, ut aiebat, plus essent ei oneri quam honori, si hoc scirent; sed eos voluit consanguineos habere qui eum consanguineum habuerunt quando fuit pauper claustralis.

Quosdam eorum, (eos secundum quod sibi utiles et idoneos æstimavit) diversis officiis in domo sua, quosdam villis custodiendis, deputavit. Quos autem infideles probavit, a se elongavit, sine spe redeundi.

Quendam hominem mediæ manus,[†] qui patrimonium ejus fideliter servaverat, et ei juveni devote servierat, pro caro consanguineo habuit, et filio ejus clerico primam ecclesiam in abbacia sibi commissa vacantem dedit, et cæteros filios ejus omnes promovit.

since he had no relatives within the third degree, or pretended that he had not. I have, however, heard him assert that he had relations who were noble and distinguished, but that he would never at any time recognise them as relations. For, as he said, they would be rather a burden than a source of advantage to him if they knew of their relationship. On the other hand, he wished to have as kin those who had claimed kinship with him when he was a poor cloistered monk.

Some of his relations, in cases where he thought them useful and capable men, he appointed to various offices in his house, and others he entrusted with the wardenship of manors. But any whom he proved to be unfaithful he drove far from him, without hope of return.

He held as his dear kinsman a certain man of low birth, who had managed his inheritance faithfully and served him devotedly in his boyhood. To this man's son, who was a clerk, he gave the first church which fell vacant after his accession to the abbacy, and he also promoted all the man's other sons.

[†] Of lowly station.

*How the abbot was mindful
of those who had shown
kindness to him in the past,
and how he treated those
who had been harsh.*

Capell anum
quendam, qui
eum sustinue-
rat in scholis
Parisius quæ-
stu aquæ benedictæ, quando pauper
fuerat, mandari fecit, et ei ecclesiasti-
cum beneficium quo sustentari possit,
affectu vicario, contulit.

Cuidam servienti prædecessoris sui
victum et vestitum concessit omnibus
diebus vitæ suæ, qui imposuerat ei
compedes ad præceptum domini sui,
quando fuit positus in carcere.

Filio Eliæ, pincernæ Hugonis abbatis,
facienti ei homagium de terra patris
sui, dixit in plena curia: “Distuli jam
capere homagium tuum vij. annis de
terra quam H. abbas dedit patri tuo,
quia illud donum erat in detrimentum
aulæ de Elmeswell: modo victus sum,
memor beneficii quod pater tuus mihi
fecit quando in vinculis eram, quia mi-
sit mihi portionem de ipso vino quod
dominus suus biberat, mandando ut
confortarer in Deo.”

There was a certain chaplain who had
maintained him in the schools of Paris
by the sale of holy water,⁶⁰ when he
was poor. This man the abbot caused
to be summoned to him, and confer-
red on him an ecclesiastical benefice,
with the position of vicar, whereby he
might be supported.

He granted to a certain servant of his
predecessor food and clothing for all
the days of his life, this man being he
who had placed fetters on him at the
command of his lord when he was im-
prisoned.

When FitzElias,⁶¹ the cup-bearer of ab-
bot Hugh, came to do him homage for
his father's land, the abbot said to him
in open court, “I have delayed now for
seven years to receive your homage
for the land which abbot Hugh gave to
your father, since that gift was to the
detriment of the manor of Elmswell.
Now I give way, since I am mindful of
the good which your father did to me
when I was in bonds. For he sent to me
some of the very wine which his lord
drank, with a message that I should be

⁶⁰It was common practice to devote the money derived from the sale of holy water to the support of poor clerks. The synod of Exeter (1287) definitely provided that such profits should be so spent. (*Mem. I.*, 247, note b.)

⁶¹As to grants of land to Elias, by abbot Hugh, see Rokewode (p. 122). The total amounted to one hundred and forty acres, of which sixty were in Elmswell.

of good courage in God.”

Magistro Waltero, filio magistri Willelmi de Dice, petenti caritative vicariam ecclesiæ de Cheventona, respondit: “Pater tuus magister scholarum erat; et cum pauper clericus eram, concessit mihi introitum scholæ suæ sine pacto et caritative, et usum discendi; et ego, causa Dei, concedo tibi quod postulas.”

When master William, son of master William of Diss,⁶² asked of his grace for the vicarage of the church of Chevington, he answered, “Your father was master of the schools, and when I was a poor clerk he allowed me to enter the school without terms and of his grace, and to have the opportunity of learning. And I, for the sake of God, grant you that which you ask.”

Duos etiam milites de Risebi, Willelmum et Normannum, cum iudicati essent forte in misericordia ejus, ita allocutus est coram omnibus; “Cum essem monachus claustralis missus Dunelmiam pro negotiis ecclesiæ nostræ, et illinc in redeundo per Risebi, vespere obscuro interceptus, petissem hospitium a domino Normanno, omnino repulsam sustinui; domum vero domini Willelmi adiens et hospitium postulans, ab eo honorifice susceptus sum: et ideo xx. solidos, scilicet misericordiam, sine misericordia, integram recipiam a Normanno; Willelmo autem gratias ago, et debitam miserationem xx. solidorum gratanter remitto.”

Two knights also from Risby, William and Norman, were by chance judged to be at his mercy, and he thus addressed them in the presence of all: “When I was a cloistered monk, I was sent to Durham on the business of our church. And as I was returning thence by way of Risby, I was overtaken by a dark night, and sought entertainment from the lord Norman, but suffered an absolute denial. Then I went to the house of lord William and prayed for lodging, and was honourably received by him. For this cause I will take twenty shillings, the full penalty, without pity, from Norman; but I give thanks to William, and gladly remit the due penalty of twenty shillings.”

⁶² This is the compiler of the passage which appears at the end of Jocelin's *Chronicle* (see note to p. 153).

*Concerning other good acts
of abbot Samson.*

Quædam juven-
cula vir-
guncula, ostia-
tim victum quærens, conquesta est
abbati, quod unus ex filiis Ricardi filii
Drogonis eam vi oppresserat; quæ
tandem, procurante abbate, pro bono
pacis unam marcā accepit. Abbas
autem iij^{or} marcas accepit ab eodem
R. pro concessione concordie; sed
omnes illas v. marcas jussit dari sta-
tim cuidam mercatori, hoc pacto, ut
præfatam pauperulam duceret in
uxorem.

Before A.D. 1198.

In villa Sancti
Ædmundi do-
mos lapideas emit abbas, et eas sco-
larum regimini assignavit, hac occa-
sione, ut pauperes clerici in perpe-
tuum ibi quieti essent de conductio-
ne domus, ad quam conducendam de-
narium vel obolum singuli scolares,
tam impotentes quam potentes, bis in
anno conferre cgebantur.

*How the Jews were driven
from Saint Edmund's.*
A.D. 1190.

Recuperatio
manerii de
Mildenhala
pro mille mar-
culis argenti et centum, et ejectio Ju-

A certain young girl, who was begging
her bread from door to door, made
complaint to the abbot that one of the
sons of Richard FitzDrogo had assaul-
ted her. This wrong, by the abbot's
intervention, was at last settled for the
sake of peace by the acceptance of one
mark by the girl. The abbot further
took four marks from the said Richard
for leave to compound for his offence.
But all these five marks he ordered to
be given at once to a certain pedlar, on
condition that he should marry the
poor girl.

In the town of St. Edmund's the ab-
bot bought stone houses, and appoin-
ted them for the maintenance of the
schools.⁶³ His reason for so doing was
that thus the poor clerks might there
be for ever free from paying rent for
houses. Hitherto, for the payment of
the rent, all the scholars, poor and rich
alike, had been compelled to contri-
bute a penny or a halfpenny twice a
year.

The recovery of the manor of Milde-
nhall for one thousand one hundred
silver marks, and the expulsion of the
Jews⁶⁴ from the town of St. Edmund's,
and the foundation of a new hospital

⁶³The date of the foundation of the school by abbot Samson is uncertain. But as there is a grant to the master in 1198, the foundation was probably made early in the abbacy of Samson. (Cp. Rokewode, p. 123.)

deorum de villa Sancti Ædmundi, et fundatio novi hospitalis de Babbewell, magnæ probitatis sunt indicia. at Babwell, were signs of great virtue.

Dominus abbas petiit a rege literas ut Judei ejicerentur[†] a villa Sancti Ædmundi, allegans quod quicquid est in villa Sancti Ædmundi, vel infra *ban-namleucam*, de jure Sancti Ædmundi est; ergo, vel Judei debent esse homines Sancti Ædmundi, vel de villa sunt ejiciendi. Data est ergo licentia, ut eos ejiceret, ita tamen quod haberent omnia katalla, scilicet et pretia domorum suarum et terrarum. Et cum emissi essent, et armata manu conducti ad diversa oppida, abbas jussit sollempniter The lord abbot sought letters from the king that the Jews might be expelled from the town of St. Edmund's, asserting that whatever is in the town of the blessed Edmund, or within the district subject to the jurisdiction of the monastery, belongs of right to the Saint, and that consequently the Jews ought either to be the men of St. Edmund, or else be driven from the town. Leave, therefore, was given to him to eject them, provided that they should have all their chattels, as well as the value

⁶⁴ Arnold (*Mem. I.*, 249, note) points out that, in the absence of any royal castle to which the Jews might retire for safety, their expulsion was really in their own interests. They would otherwise be always liable to massacre, and especially at this particular time, which was marked by an outburst of fanaticism against the Jews, who were massacred in many towns, especially at York. Diceto (*II.*, 75–6) mentions the massacre of fifty-seven Jews at St. Edmund's on Palm Sunday, 1190.

[†] Under the circumstances, this must have been the most humane course in the interest of the Jews themselves. All large English towns at this time were imperfectly policed, and the temper of the populace savage and uncertain. A riot having been once set on foot, the only hope of safety for the Jews was in taking refuge in some royal castle. Thus at Norwich, where there was a massacre of Jews about this time (Feb. 6, Diceto), those of them who were found in private houses perished; those who escaped to the castle were safe. So at Lincoln, the rumour of an intended attack having come to their ears, the Jews of the town sought shelter in the "munitio regia" (*Newb. iv. 9*) and saved their lives. At York, where the hideous tragedy of their fate was on so large a scale as to attract the notice of history, the Jews, having been admitted into the castle, would have escaped with life but for their own suspicious folly, which led them to shut the gates against the governor, when for some cause he had gone outside the walls. But at Lynn in January, and at Stamford on the 7th March, there being no royal castle at either place, the resident Jews had been killed and plundered with impunity. At Bury itself (*Harl. 1032*, sub an. 1090; Diceto, 651) there was a murderous outbreak on Palm Sunday (March 18) in which, according to Diceto, fifty-seven Jews perished. There was no castle at Bury; to the abbot alone could the survivors look for protection; and Samson knew that he had not sufficient force at his command to ensure it to them. To banish them therefore was the best thing that could be done.

excommunicari per omnes ecclesias et ad omnia altaria omnes illos, qui de cetero receptarent Judeos vel in hospitio reciperent in villa Sancti Ædmundi. Quod tamen postea dispensatum est per justiciaries regis, scilicet, ut si Judei venerint ad magna placita abbatis ad exigendum debita sua a debitoribus suis, sub hac occasione poterunt duobus diebus et ij. noctibus hospitari in villa, tertio autem die libere discedent.

of their houses and lands. And when they were sent forth, and under armed force were conducted to various towns, the abbot ordered that in every church and before every altar those should be solemnly excommunicated who should henceforth receive Jews or entertain them as guests in the town of St. Edmund's. This provision was afterwards modified by the justices of the king, to the effect that if Jews should come to the great pleas of the abbot in order to exact debts due to them from their debtors, then for this reason they might be entertained for two days and two nights in the town, and depart in peace on the third day.

How the abbot secured the manor of Mildenhall, and endowed the hospital at Babwell.
A.D. 1189 September.

Abbas optulit regi Ricardo quingentas marcas pro manerio de Mildenhala, dicens illud manerium lx. librarum et decem, et pro tanto esse rollatum in magna rolla de Wincestria.[†] Et cum ita spem voti sui con-

The abbot offered king Richard five hundred marks for the manor of Mildenhall,⁶⁵ saying that the annual value of that manor was seventy pounds, and that it had been enrolled for that amount in the great roll of Winchester.⁶⁶ And when he thought that he would obtain his desire in this matter, the settlement of the affair was

⁶⁵This manor was in the hands of the Crown in Domesday. It had, however, been granted to St. Edmund by the charter of Edward the Confessor, and was held by a certain Stigand during the life of Edward (*Mem.* I., 48 and 250, note *a*; cp. *Monasticon* III., 188). The present transaction is related by Benedictus (II., 91; cp. Hoveden, III., 18) "And Samson, abbot of St. Edmund's, bought from King Richard the manor, which is called Mildenhall, for one thousand marks, because it was said to have belonged originally to the abbey of St. Edmund's."

[†]Domesday Book; the returns forming the basis of which "were transmitted to a board sitting at Winchester, by whom they were arranged in order and placed upon record": Lingard, i. 249.

⁶⁶That is, Domesday Book.

cepiisset, cepit res dilationem usque in crastinum. Interim venit aliquis dicens regi, manerium illud bene valere c. libras. In crastino ergo abbate petitioni suæ instante, dixit rex: “Nichil est, domine abbas, quod quæris, vel mille marcas dabis, vel manerium non habebis.”

postponed to the following day. In the interval there came one to the king and told him that the manor was worth quite one hundred pounds. And so when the abbot urged his request on the morrow, the king said to him, “My lord abbot, it is useless for you to make this petition to me. Either you shall give me a thousand marks, or you shall not have the manor.”

Cum autem regina Ellienor secundum consuetudinem regni[†] deberet accipere c. marcas ubi rex cepit mille, accepit a nobis calicem magnum aureum in pretium c. marcarum, et eundem calicem nobis reddidit pro anima domini sui regis Henrici, qui eum primo dederat Sancto Ædmundo.

But queen Eleanor, who according to the custom of the realm, had the right to receive a hundred marks when the king received a thousand,⁶⁷ took from us a great gold chalice of the value of a hundred marks, and restored this same chalice to us for the good of the soul of king Henry her lord, who had originally given it to St. Edmund.

A.D. 1193

Alia quoque vice, cum thesaurus ecclesiæ nostræ[‡] portaretur Lundonias ad redemptionem regis Ricardi, eadem regina^{*} eundem calicem adquietavit pro c. marcis et nobis reddidit, accipiens cartam nostram a

At a later date, when the treasure of our church was carried to London for the ransom of king Richard,⁶⁸ the queen redeemed the same chalice⁶⁹ for a hundred marks and restored it to us, and received from us a charter in proof of our promise, made on the word of tru-

[†] The “custom” here alluded to is described by Blackstone (*Commentaries*, i. 229, edition of 1844) as “an ancient perquisite called queen-gold or *aurum reginæ*,” due, in proportion of ten per cent., from every person making a voluntary offering to the king. “As, if an hundred marks of silver be given to the king for liberty to take in mortmain, or to have a fair, market, park, chase, or free warren, then the queen is entitled to ten marks in silver, or (what was formerly an equivalent denomination) to one mark in gold.”

⁶⁷ This was the “*aurum reginæ*” or queen-gold, a due of ten per cent., to be paid by everyone whose made a gift to the king. (Blackstone, quoted by Arnold, *Mem. I.*, 250, note c.)

nobis in testimonium promissionis nostræ factæ in verbo veritatis, quod calicem illum nunquam pro aliquo casu ab ecclesia nostra alienabimus.

A.D. 1198

Cum autem persoluta esset tanta pecunia cum magna difficultate adquisita, sedit abbas in capitulo, dicens se habere aliquam portionem de tanto quæstu tanti manerii. Et responsum est a conventu quod hoc justum est, et ad voluntatem vestram fiat. Et dixit abbas, se posse vindicare de jure dimidiam partem, ostendens se plusquam cccc. marcas cum magnis laboribus expendisse, sed dixit se esse contentum quadam portione illius manerii, quæ dicitur Icklingham; quod concessum est ei libentissime a conventu. Abbas vero hoc audiens,

th, that we would never for any reason alienate that chalice from our church.

Now when this large sum of money had been collected with great difficulty and had been paid, the abbot, sitting in the chapter, said that he ought to share somewhat in so great an acquisition as that of so fair a manor. And the monastery answered, "That is just. Let it be done according to your will." And the abbot said that he might lawfully claim half of it, and showed that he had spent more than four hundred marks with great labour, but that he would be content with one portion of that manor, a place called Icklingham, and this was most readily granted to him by the monastery. Hearing this,

[‡]The exaction of a heavy ransom by a German emperor (Henry VI.) from an adversary who had fallen under his power, like the substantially similar transaction in 1871, was conducted with all the forms of courtesy. The sum demanded was 70,000 marks; and Richard declared (in the letter to his mother written from Hagenau on the 19th April 1193, in obedience to which St. Edmund's and all other monasteries in the kingdom handed over their gold and silver to royal commissioners), that the treaty of amity which he had concluded with the emperor was worth all the money, and that if he were free and at home in England, he would voluntarily pay as much or more money to obtain such a treaty! (Hoved. iii. 209).

*"The Queen's release of the golden chalice is set forth in the Registr. Sacr., fol. 29 v., and is printed in Dugdale" (Rokewode).

⁶⁸Richard was ransomed from Henry VI., for 100,000 marks of silver "according to the standard of Koln." (Hoveden, III., 215-6. Diceto, II., 110.) The demands made on the clergy and laity may be found in Hoveden (III., 208 ff.). All the monasteries were obliged to hand over their gold and silver, which was placed in the hands of royal commissioners appointed to superintend the raising of the ransom. (Hoveden, III., 210.)

⁶⁹The charter of release is printed in Dugdale's *Monasticon* (Ed. 1846; Vol. III., 154).

dixit: “Et ego illam partem terræ recipio ad meum opus, non ut retineam in manu mea, vel ut parentibus meis donem, sed pro anima mea et pro animabus vestris communiter dono illam novo hospitali de Babbewell, in sustentationem pauperum et usum hospitalitatis.” Dixit, et ita factum est, et carta regis postea confirmatum.

the abbot said, “And I receive that portion of the land for my own purposes, not that I may keep it in my hand or to give it to my relations, but that for the good of my soul and of the souls of all of you, I give it to the new hospital at Babwell,⁷⁰ for the support of the poor and for the use of the hospital.” So he spoke, and so it was done, and the act was afterwards confirmed by a charter from the king.⁷¹

Hæc et consimilia facta, scriptis et laudibus æternanda, fecit abbas Samson. Nichil tamen se dixit agere, nisi posset facere in diebus suis dedicari ecclesiam nostram; post quod factum, asseruit se velle mori: ad cuius facti sollemnitatem dixit se esse paratum expendere duo milia marcas argenti, dummodo dominus rex ibi esset præsens, et res debito honore peragi possit.

These and other like things did abbot Samson, which are worthy to be written down and to be praised for all time. Yet he declared that he would have done nothing, unless in his time he could bring to pass that our church should be dedicated; and when that had been accomplished, he asserted that he was ready to die. Moreover, he said that for the doing of this thing he would expend two thousand marks of silver, if so the king might be present and the affair carried through with due ceremony.

*Concerning the church of
Woolpit, and how it was
secured for the abbey.
A.D. 1183*

Nuntiatum
est abbati,
quod ecclesia
de Wlpet vaca-

The abbot learnt that the church of Woolpit was vacant, for Walter of Coutances⁷² had been elected to the bishopric of Lincoln. And presently he summoned together the prior and

⁷⁰Traces of this are to be found in a small ruin near the railway bridge on the Thetford road. (Arnold, *Mem. I.*, 252, note *a*.)

⁷¹On this charter, see Rokewode (p. 124–5).

ret, Waltero de Constantiis[†] electo ad episcopatum de Lincolnia. Mox convocavit priorem et magnam partem conventus, et incipiens narrationem suam, et[‡] ait: “Bene scitis quod multum laboravi propter ecclesiam de Wlpet, propter quam habendam in proprios usus vestros iter arripui versus Romam per consilium vestrum, tempore scismatis inter papam Alexandrum et Octavianum, transivique per Italiam, illa tempestate qua omnes clerici qui portabant literas domini papæ Alexandri capiebantur, et quidam incarcerationantur, quidam suspendebantur, quidam, truncatis naso et labiis, remittebantur ad papam in dedecus et confusionem ipsius. Ego vero simulavi me esse Scottum, et Scotti habitum induens, et gestum

most of the monastery, and taking up his tale, said: “You know well what great labours I have undergone in the matter of the church of Woolpit, and how to secure it for your exclusive use I journeyed to Rome by your advice, in the days of the schism between Alexander and Octavian.⁷³ And I traversed Italy at the time when all clerks bearing letters of pope Alexander were seized, some of them being imprisoned and others hanged, and others, after having their noses and lips cut off, were sent back to the pope to his shame and confusion. I, however, pretended that I was a Scot,⁷⁴ and put on Scottish dress, and adopted the manners of a Scot. And I often shook my staff as they shake the weapon which they call a gaveloc at those who moc-

[†]Walter of Coutances, who, when archdeacon of Oxford, had been one of the witnesses to Henry II's will, was elected to Lincoln in July 1183, and consecrated in France, by Richard, archbishop of Canterbury. In the following year he was made archbishop of Rouen. Many interesting letters from him to Ralph de Diceto, dean of London, are preserved in the *Ymagines Historiarum* of the latter.

⁷²Elected bishop of Lincoln and consecrated in 1183. In the next year he was translated to Rouen. He was one of Richard I's most trusted servants, and was sent to England to settle the disputes which arose between Longchamp and John after the departure of Richard on the crusade. He died in 1207.

[‡]*Sic.*

⁷³On the death of Adrian IV., in 1159, Cardinal Roland was elected by a majority only, and took the name of Alexander III. The imperialist party, however, declared Cardinal Octavian pope under the name of Victor IV. Octavian was supported by the citizens of Rome and by the emperor, and recognised by the imperial synod of Pavia. Alexander took refuge in France. Victor died (1164) without the dispute having been finally settled. (Cp. Gregorovius, *City of Rome in the Middle Ages* (Eng. trans.) Vol. IV, p. 563 ff.)

⁷⁴Arnold (*Mem. I.*, xliii.) gives as the reason for Samson's action the fact that Scotland favoured the party of Octavian, in opposition to the English support of Alexander.

Scotti habens, sæpe illis qui mihi il-
ludebant baculum meum excussi, ad
modum teli quod vocatur *gaveloc*, de
more Scottorum voces comminatorias
proferens. Obviantibus et interrogan-
tibus, quis essem, nichil respondi, nisi:
'*Ride, ride Rome, turne Cantwereberei.*'
Sic feci, ut me et propositum meum
celarem,

Tutius et peterem, Scotti sub
imagine, Romam.

Impetratis autem literis a domino pa-
pa pro voto meo, in redeundo transivi
per quoddam castellum, sicut via mea
ducebat ab urbe; et ecce ministri de
castro circumdederunt me, capientes
et dicentes: 'Iste solivagus, qui Scot-
tum se facit, vel explorator est, vel por-
titor literarum falsi papæ Alexandri.'
Et dum perscrutabantur panniculos
meos et caligas, et femoralia, et etiam
sotulares veteres, quos super humeros
portavi ad consuetudinem Scottorum,
injeci manum meam in peram quam
portavi cuteam, in qua scriptum do-
mini papæ continebatur, positum sub
ciffio parvo, quo bibere solebam: et Do-
mino Deo volente, et sancto Ædmun-
do, simul extraxi scriptum illud cum
ciffio, ita quod, brachium extendens in
altum, breve tenui sub ciffio. Ciffum

ked me, shouting threatening words
in the manner of the Scots. To those
who met me and asked me who I was,
I answered nothing except, 'Ride, ride
Rome, turne Cantwereberei.'⁷⁵ I acted
thus that so I might conceal my pur-
pose, and as a Scot might safely reach
Rome. Then when I had obtained
from the lord pope such letters as I de-
sired, on my homeward way I passed
by a certain castle as the road led me
from the city. And, lo! the officers of
the castle surrounded me, laying hold
on me, and crying, 'This wanderer,
who makes himself out to be a Scot, is
either a spy or one bearing letters of
the false pope Alexander.' And while
they closely examined my clothes and
boots and undergarments, and even
the old shoes, which I carried on my
shoulders in the Scottish manner, I
put my hand into the little bag which
I carried, and in which the letter of
the lord pope was contained, lying
under a little cup from which I was
wont to drink. And the Lord God and
St. Edmund willing it, I drew out the
writing and the cup together, so that,
stretching my hand on high, I held the
writ underneath the cup. And they
saw the cup, it is true, but they did not
notice the writ. And so I escaped their

⁷⁵ Arnold (*Ibid.*, note 1) gives as the meaning of this, "I am riding towards Rome, turning from Canterbury." He adds, "If he had meant to say, 'returning from Canterbury,' he would at once have been taken for an English adherent of Alexander."

quidem viderunt, sed breve non per-
ceperunt. Et sic evasi manus eorum
in nomine Domini. Quicquid mone-
tæ habui abstulerunt a me, unde opor-
tuit me ostiatim mendicare, sine omni
expensa, donec in Angliam venirem.
Audiens autem quod ecclesia illa da-
ta esset Galfrido Ridello, contristata
est anima mea, eo quod in vanum la-
boravi. Veniens ergo domum, feretro
Sancti Ædmundi latenter me suppo-
sui, timens ne dominus abbas me ca-
peret, et incarcerationet, qui nichil mali
merueram; nec erat monachus qui me-
cum audebat loqui, nec laicus qui mihi
auderet victum ministrare, nisi aliquis
furtive. Tandem, inito consilio, misit
me abbas apud Acram in exilium, ibi-
que diu moram feci. Hæc et multa alia
mala innumerabilia passus sum prop-
ter ecclesiam de Wlpet; sed benedic-
tus Deus, qui omnia cooperat in bo-
num; ecce! ecclesia, pro qua tot mala
sustinui, data est in manu mea, et nunc
potestatem habeo donandi eam ubi
voluero, quia vacat. Et ego eam con-
ventui reddo, et in suos proprios usus
assigno antiquam consuetudinem vel
pensionem x. marcarum, quam perdi-
distis plus quam lx. annis. Integram
libentius vobis eam darem, si possem;

hands, in the name of the Lord. Wha-
tever money I had on me they took
away, so that it was necessary for me
to beg for my bread, spending nothing,
until I came to England. But when
I heard that the church was given to
Geoffrey Ridel,⁷⁶ my soul was grieved
with the thought that my labour had
been vain. So when I reached home I
secretly cast myself before the shrine
of St. Edmund, for I feared that the
lord abbot would seize me and cast
me into prison, who had deserved
no ill. And there was no monk who
dared to speak with me, and no lay-
man who dared supply me with food,
save secretly. At length, the abbot
took counsel and exiled me to Acre,⁷⁷
and there I long remained. These
and many other countless ills I have
suffered for the sake of the church of
Woolpit. But blessed be God, Who
maketh all things work together for
good! Behold! the church for which
I have borne so many hardships, is
given into my hand, and now I have
the power to give it to whomsoever I
will, since it is vacant. And I restore it
to the monastery, and for its sole use
I assign the ancient customary due
or pension of ten marks, which you

⁷⁶ Archdeacon of Canterbury, and a strenuous opponent of Becket. He was elected to Ely in 1173, and died in 1189. In the text of the *Chronicle* there will be found an account of a dispute between him and Samson, as to the bishop's right to demand timber (p. 113 ff.).

⁷⁷ As to this, see note to p. 6.

sed scio, quod episcopus Norwicensis mihi contradiceret, vel si hoc concederet, tali occasione subjectionem et obedientiam de vobis sibi vindicaret, quod est inconsultum et inconveniens. Faciamus ergo quod de jure possumus facere; ponamus clericum vicarium, qui episcopo respondeat de spiritualibus, et vobis de decem marcis; et volo, si vos consulitis, ut vicaria illa donec alicui consanguineo R. de Hengheham, monachi et fratris vestri, qui mihi fuit consors in illo itinere versus Romam, et eisdem periculis expositus et propter idem negotium.”

have lost for more than sixty years. I would give it in its entirety to you with pleasure were I able to do so; but I know that the bishop of Norwich would forbid this, or if he were to grant it, he would make it an excuse to demand subjection and obedience from you, which is neither wise nor convenient. Therefore let us do what we may lawfully do. Let us place there a clerk as vicar to answer to the bishop for the spiritualities, and to you for the ten marks; and I wish, if you agree, that the vicarage may be given to some relative of Roger de Hengham, a monk and your brother, who was my companion in that journey to Rome, and was exposed to the same dangers as I was and for the same cause.”

His dictis omnes surreximus et gratias egimus; et receptus est Hugo clericus, frater prædicti Rogeri, ad prædictam ecclesiam, salva nobis annua pensione x^{cem} marcarum.

At these words we all arose and gave thanks; and Hugh, a clerk and a brother of the said Roger, was received in the said church, saving our annual pension of ten marks.

*How the abbot disputed
with the archbishop
concerning the manor of
Eleigh.
C. A.D. 1186*

In manerio monachorum Cantuariensis, quod dicitur Illegga, et quod est in hundredo abbatis, contigit fieri homicidium. Homines vero archiepiscopi noluerunt pati, ut illi homicidæ starent ad rectum in

In manerio monachorum Cantuariensis, quod dicitur Illegga,

In a manor of the monks of Canterbury, which is called Eleigh, and which is in the hundred of the abbot, there chanced to be a murder. But the archbishop's men would not allow the murderers to take their trial in the court of St. Edmund. Then the abbot made complaint to king Henry, and said that archbishop Baldwin⁷⁸ was

curia sancti Ædmundi. Abbas vero conquestus est regi Henrico, dicens, quod archiepiscopus Baldewinus vindicabat sibi libertates ecclesiæ nostræ, optentu cartæ novæ quam rex dederat ecclesiæ Cantuariensi post mortem sancti Thomæ.

Rex autem respondit, se nunquam fecisse cartam aliquam in præjudicium ecclesiæ nostræ nec aliquid sancto Ædmando velle auferre, quod habere solebat. Quo audito, dixit abbas consiliariis privatis suis: "Sanius consilium est, ut archiepiscopus conqueratur de me, quam ego de archiepiscopo. Volo me ponere in saisinam hujus libertatis, et post me defendam cum auxilio sancti Ædmundi, cujus jus hoc esse cartæ nostræ testantur."

Subito ergo, summo mane, procurante Roberto de Cokefeld, missi sunt circiter quater xx. homines armati ad villam de Ilegga, et ex inopinato ceperunt illos tres homicidas et ligatos duxerunt ad Sanctum Ædmundum, et in fundum carceris projecerunt. Conquerente inde archiepiscopo, Ranulfus de Glanvilla iusticiarius præcepit, ut

claiming the liberties of our church for himself, on the ground of a new charter which the king had given to the church of Canterbury after the death of the blessed Thomas.

Then the king answered that he had never given a charter to the prejudice of our church, and that he did not wish to take from the blessed Edmund anything which he had formerly possessed. On hearing this, the abbot said to his intimate advisers: "It is wiser counsel that the archbishop should make complaint of me than that I should make complaint of the archbishop. I wish to place myself in possession of this liberty, and then I will defend myself with the help of St. Edmund, in whose right our charters bear witness that this liberty is."

Accordingly, unexpectedly, and very early in the morning, with the help of Robert de Cokefield, about eighty armed men were sent to the town of Eleigh, and took those three murderers by surprise and brought them bound to St. Edmund's, and cast them into the dungeon of the prison. And when the archbishop made complaint

⁷⁸Bishop of Worcester (1180–83). He was elected to Canterbury, after some dispute, on the death of Richard of Dover, December 1183. (Gervase, I., 311 ff.) Died, 1190, at the siege of Acre.

homines illi ponerentur per vadium et plegios ad standum ad rectum in curia qua deberent stare, et summonitus est abbas, ut veniret ad curiam regis, responsurus de vi et injuria, quam dicebatur fecisse archiepiscopo. Abbas vero sine omni exonio se pluries præsentavit.

of this, Ranulf Glanvill, the justiciar, commanded that those men should be bound by surety and pledges to stand their trial in the court wherein they ought to stand it; and the abbot was summoned to come to the court of the king and to make reply concerning the violence and injury which he was said to have done to the archbishop. And the abbot many times presented himself at the court, without attempting to make excuse.

A.D. 1187 February 11.

Tandem in capite jejunii steterunt coram rege in capitulo Cantuariensi, et lectæ sunt palam cartæ ecclesiarum hinc et inde. Et respondit dominus rex: "Istæ cartæ ejusdem antiquitatis sunt et ab eodem rege Ædwardo emanant. Nescio quid dicam nisi ut cartæ ad invicem pugnent."[†] Cui abbas dixit: "Quicquid de cartis dicatur, nos in saisina sumus, et hucusque fuimus, et de hoc ponere me volo in verumdictum duorum comitatum, scilicet, Norfolchiæ et Suthfolchiæ, se hoc concedere."

At last, at the beginning of the fasting time,⁷⁹ they stood before the king in the chapter-house of Canterbury, and the charters of the two churches were read publicly. And the lord king answered, "These charters are of equal age, and come from the same king Edward. I know not what to say, save that the charters are contradictory." To this the abbot replied, "Whatever may be said about the charters, we are seised of the liberty, and have been in the past, and on this point I will submit to the verdict of the two counties, Norfolk and Suffolk, which will allow

⁷⁹ Gervase (I., 353) mentions the meeting and supplies the date.

[†] In margine hic legitur: "Quia carta quam habemus de sancto Ædwardo antiquior est, quam carta quam habent monachi Cantuarienses. Quia carta, quam habent, non data eis libertatem, nisi inter homines suos tantum: et carta nostra loquitur de tempore regis Ædwardi et de tempore matris suæ reginæ Emmæ, quæ habuit viii. hundredos et dimidium in dotem, ante tempora sancti Ædwardi, et Mildenhale insimul" (Roke.).

⁸⁰ That is, will admit that the abbey has possessed this jurisdiction from time immemorial. (*Mem.*, I., 256, note.)

this.”⁸⁰

Sed archiepiscopus Baldwinus, habito prius consilio cum suis, dixit, homines Norfolchiæ et Suthfolchiæ multum diligere Sanctum Ædmundum, et magnam partem illorum comitatum esse sub ditione abbatis, et ideo se nolle stare illorum arbitrio. Rex vero iratus inde et indignans surrexit, et recedendo dixit: “Qui potest capere capiat:” et sic res cepit dilationem, “et adhuc sub iudice lis est.”[†]

Vidi tamen, quod quidam homines monachorum Cantuariensium vulnerati fuerunt usque ad mortem a rusticis de villa de Meldingis, que sita est in hundredo Sancti Ædmundi; et qui sciverunt, quod actor forum rei sequi debet, maluerunt silere et dissimulare, quam inde clamorem facere abbati sive baillivis ejus, quia nullo modo voluerunt venire in curiam Sancti Ædmundi ad placitandum.

A.D. 1191.

Postea levaverunt homines de Illegga quoddam trebuchet, ad faciendam justitiam pro falsis mensuris panis vel bladi mensurandi, unde

Archbishop Baldwin, however, having first taken counsel with his men, said that the men of Norfolk and Suffolk loved St. Edmund greatly, and that a large part of those counties was under the rule of the abbot, and therefore he would not abide by their arbitration. But the king was angry and offended at that, and rising up, left the place, saying, “He that is able to receive it, let him receive it.”⁸¹ And thus the matter was postponed, and is still undecided.

But I saw that some of the men of the monks of Canterbury were wounded to the death by the rustics of the township of Midling, which is situated in the hundred of St. Edmund, and as they knew that the prosecutor is bound to go to the court of the defendant, they preferred to be silent and to hide the matter, rather than complain of it to the abbot or his officers, since they were in nowise willing to come and plead in the court of St. Edmund.

After these things the men of Eleigh set up a certain measure for the doing of justice in cases where bread and corn had been measured with false measures, and the abbot made com-

⁸¹ Matt. xix., 12.

[†] Hor. de Arte Poet. 78.

conquestus est abbas domino Eliensi episcopo, tunc justiciario et cancellario. Ille vero abbatem audire nolebat, quia dicebatur olfacere archiepiscopatum, qui vacabat tunc temporis. Cum autem venisset apud nos, et susceptus esset ut legatus, antequam recederet, orationem fecit ad feretrum sancti martyris; abbasque, nacta opportunitate, dixit, cunctis audientibus qui aderant: "Domine episcope, libertas, quam sibi vindicant monachi Cantuarienses, est jus sancti Ædmundi, cuius corpus præsens est, et quia non vis me adjuvare ad tuendam libertatem ecclesiæ suæ, pono loquelam inter te et ipsum. Ipse de cætero procuret jus suum." Cancellarius nichil dignatus est respondere; qui infra annum Angliam exire compulsus est, et divinam

plaint of this to the lord bishop of Ely,⁸² who was at that time justiciar and chancellor. But he would not hear the abbot, because he was alleged to be scenting the archbishopric,⁸³ which was then vacant. When, however, he had come among us, and was received as legate, before he departed, he made prayer at the shrine of the holy martyr. And the abbot, seizing the opportunity, said in the hearing of all who were present, "My lord bishop, the liberty, which the monks of Canterbury claim, is the right of St. Edmund, whose body is here, and as you will not assist me to protect the liberty of his church, I put a complaint between you and him. Henceforth he may secure his right." The chancellor did not condescend to make any answer,⁸⁴ and within a

⁸²William Longchamp, elected to Ely and made justiciar and joint regent at the accession of Richard I. He was driven from office in 1191, owing to the opposition of John and Hugh Puiset, bishop of Durham. He died in 1197.

⁸³The archbishopric remained vacant from the death of Baldwin until 1191—over a year—when Reginald, bishop of Bath, was elected. He died less than fifteen days later. (Benedictus, II., 226–7.) The archbishopric then remained vacant again until the election of Hubert Walter, 1193.

⁸⁴The pride of Longchamp is the common theme of all the chroniclers, who unite in attributing his fall to this fault. Having obtained the legation from Clement III., he claimed to be supreme over church and state alike, refusing (perhaps in accord with Richard's instructions) to admit that he had any colleague in the office of justiciar. His character is sketched in a letter of Hugh Nunant, bishop of Coventry, which is to be found in Benedictus (II., 215–20). "He was a man great among all the people of the west, as one having power over the kingdom and the authority of the apostolic see, being as it were ambidextrous. . . . He seemed, indeed, to divide the elements with God, leaving heaven alone to the God of heaven. . . . From sea to sea he was feared as God, and were I to say more than God, I should not lie, for God is long-suffering and merciful, but he did all things ill and in haste." William of Newburgh calls him "that rhinoceros." Richard of Devizes calls him "that three-named and threefold man."

ultionem expertus est.

A.D. 1193.

Cum autem idem cancellarius redisset de Almannia, et applicuisset apud Gippewic, et pernoctasset apud Heggham, venit rumor ad abbatem, quod cancellarius vellet transire per Sanctum Ædmundum, apud nos missam in crastino auditurus. Prohibuit ergo abbas, ne celebrarentur divina, dum cancellarius esset in ecclesia præsens, quia dixit se audisse, apud Londonias, Londoniensem episcopum pronuntiasse cancellarium esse excommunicatum, et excommunicatum[†] recessisse ab Anglia, coram sex episcopis, et nominatim pro violentia illata archiepiscopo Eboracensi

year was forced to leave England, and suffered divine vengeance.

But when the same chancellor had returned from Germany⁸⁵ and had landed at Ipswich, and spent the night at Hitcham, a report came to the abbot that the chancellor wished to pass through St. Edmund's, and to hear mass with us on the morrow. Therefore the abbot forbade the celebration of the divine offices while the chancellor was present in the church, for he said that he had heard in London that the bishop of London had pronounced the chancellor excommunicate, in the presence of six bishops, especially for the violence which he had done to the archbishop of York,⁸⁶ at Dover, and that the said chancellor, while excommuni-

⁸⁵ Longchamp, after failing to persuade the regency to permit his return before, came back to England in 1193, with letters from Henry VI. as to the ransom of Richard. (Hoveden, III., 211.)

[†] In Dr. Lingard's *Hist. of Engl.* no mention is made of this excommunication. Yet the Chronicle of Bromton (Twys. 1225) distinctly says, that when in Oct. 1191, Geoffrey, Archbishop of York, on being released from confinement, came up to London, the archbishop of Rouen (Walter de Coutances) and six English bishops pronounced a sentence of excommunication against the chancellor who had imprisoned him. Diceto probably gives the real facts; he says that the archbishop and bishops pronounced the excommunication at Reading, in general terms, against "omnes qui consilium, vel auxilium, vel mandatum dederunt, ut archiepiscopus Eboracensis extraheretur ab ecclesia, tractaretur indigne, &c.," and specially against two confidential knights of the chancellor, Alberic de Marines and Alexander Puintel. (ii. 98, Rolls ed.). With this agrees in substance the account given by Gervase (i. 507, Rolls ed.). Newburgh, Hoveden, and bishop Hugh de Nunant (in the witty and abusive letter preserved by Benedictus Abbas) make no mention of any excommunication.

⁸⁶ Richard had forbidden Geoffrey to visit England for three years, but the archbishop landed at Dover. There he was arrested by order of Longchamp, but released on the intervention of John. (Benedictus, II., 106; 209–11.) As to the excommunication of Longchamp, this is mentioned by Benedictus (II., 211–12), and by Richard of Devizes (pp. 36, 43, 56). Ralph de Diceto (II., 98) makes the excommunication general only.

apud Doffram.[†]

Veniens ergo[‡] in crastino cancellarius apud nos, non invenit qui missam ei cantaret, nec clericum, nec monachum. Immo, sacerdos stans ad primam missam ad canonem missæ, et ceteri sacerdotes, ad altaria cessaverunt, stantes inmoti labiis, donec nuntius veniret dicens, illum recessisse ab ecclesia. Cancellarius omnia dissimulans, multa gravamina intulit abbati, donec, procurantibus amicis, hinc et inde ad pacis osculum reversi sunt.

How the abbot wished to take the cross, and how he offered to seek king Richard in Germany.

A.D. 1188 January 21.

nos orationis gratia, abbas ipse sibi fecit crucem occulte de lineo panno, et tenens in una manu crucem et acum et filum, petivit licentiam a rege, ut

Cum rex Henricus accepisset crucem et venisset infra mensem ad

cate, had departed from England.

Accordingly, when the chancellor came among us on the morrow, he found no one to chant mass for him, either clerk or monk. But the priest, indeed, who stood at the first mass and at the canon of the mass, and the other priests by the altars, ceased, and stood with unmoved lips, until a messenger came and said that he had left the church. The chancellor took no notice openly, but he did many ills to the abbot, until, by the mediation of friends, they both returned to the kiss of peace.

When king Henry had taken the cross⁸⁷ and was come less than a month later that he might pray among us, the abbot secretly made for himself in one hand the cross and a needle and thread, he sought leave from the king that he might take the cross. But leave was refused him, for John, bishop of Norwich,⁸⁸ opposed it, and said that it

[†] Geoffrey, who had just been consecrated at Tours, by pope Celestine's order, to the see of York, had sworn to the king, his half brother, that he would not return to England without his leave. He did return however; and on his landing at Dover (Sept. 1191) was arrested by the chancellor's orders, and thrown into prison.

[‡] Longchamp fled the kingdom in 1191, after his fall from power. "He came to England in the following year, but was not suffered to proceed farther than Canterbury, and crossed the seas again. In 1193 the chancellor returned, bearing letters from the emperor, and met the Regency at St. Alban's. It was on this occasion that he passed through St. Edmundsbury, coming from his manor of Hitcham, after landing at Ipswich." (Rokewode.)

⁸⁷ At Gisors, 1188.

acciperet crucem; sed denegata est ei licentia, procurante episcopo Norwicensi Johanne, et dicente, quia non expediret patriæ, nec tutum esset comitatibus Norfolchiæ et Sutfolchiæ, si episcopus Norwicensis et abbas Sancti Ædmundi simul recederent.

A.D. 1193.

Cum rumor venisset Lundoniis de captione regis Ricardi, et incarceratione ejus in Alemannia, et barones convenissent pro consilio accipiundo, prosiliit abbas coram omnibus, dicens, se esse paratum quærere dominum suum regem, vel in tapinagio vel alio modo, donec eum inveniret, et certam notitiam de eo haberet; ex quo verbo magnam laudem sibi adquisivit.

How the abbot resisted the authority of the legate.

A.D. 1190.

Cum cancellarius, episcopus scilicet Eliensis, legati fungeretur officio et concilium cele-

was not well for the land, nor safe for the counties of Norfolk and Suffolk, that the bishop of Norwich and the abbot of St. Edmund's should go away at the same time.

When news had reached London of the capture of king Richard,⁸⁹ and of his imprisonment in Germany, and the barons had met to take counsel on the matter, the abbot stood forth in their presence, and said that he was ready to seek his lord the king. He said that he would search for him in disguise or in any other way, until he found him and had certain knowledge of him. And from this speech he gained great praise for himself.

When the chancellor, the bishop of Ely, filled the office of legate and held a council at London,⁹⁰ he proposed certain decrees against the black monks, talking of their wandering to the shrines of St. Thomas and of St. Ed-

⁸⁸ John of Oxford, elected to Norwich in 1175; died, 1200. As a matter of fact, John did not go to Palestine. He was waylaid and robbed on his journey, and obtained absolution from his vow from the pope. Richard made this excuse for levying a heavy fine. (Hoveden, III., 42. Richard of Devizes, p. 12.)

⁸⁹ Richard was captured in December, 1192, near Vienna, and imprisoned at Durrenstein. In the following year he was handed over to the emperor Henry VI. and imprisoned in various castles in Germany. Hoveden (III., 198) only mentions the abbots of Boxley and Robertsbridge as going to search for Richard, and it would seem that Samson merely offered to go, though it appears that he did subsequently visit Germany (see text, p. 87).

braret apud Londoniam,[†] et quædam decreta proposuisset contra nigros monachos, loquens de vagatione eorum ad sanctum Thomam et ad sanctum Ædmundum peregrinationis obtentu, et contra abbates loquens, præfiniens eis certum numerum equorum: respondit abbas Samson: "Nos non recipimus aliquod decretum contra regulam sancti Benedicti, quæ permittit abbatibus liberam dispositionem habere de monachis suis. Ego vero baroniam sancti Ædmundi servo et regnum ejus; nec sufficiunt mihi tredecim equi, sicut quibusdam aliis abbatibus, nisi plures habeam ad executionem regiæ justitiæ conservandæ."

*Of the conduct of the abbot
while king Richard was in
captivity.
A.D. 1193.*

Cum esset werra in tota Anglia, capto rege Ricardo, abbas cum toto conventu sollemniter excommunicavit omnes factores werræ et pacis turbatores, non timens comitem Johannem fratrem regis nec alium, unde abbas magnanimus dicebatur. Post quod factum ivit ad

mund under pretence of pilgrimage, and speaking against the abbots, mentioning a certain number of horses which they ought to have. Then abbot Samson answered, "We will not receive any decree which is contrary to the rule of St. Benedict, which allows the abbots a free hand in the control of their monks. And I serve the barony of St. Edmund and his realm; thirteen horses are not enough for me, as they may be for some other abbots, unless I have additional horses for the administration of the justice of the king."

After the capture of king Richard, there was war throughout England. And the abbot with the whole monastery solemnly excommunicated all who stirred up war and broke the peace, showing no fear of earl John, the king's brother, or of any other, whence he was called a great-souled abbot. And after doing this, he went to the siege of Windsor,⁹¹ where he appeared in

[†] Gervase (i. 488, Rolls ed.), whose eyes seldom travel outside of Canterbury, describes the battle about precedence and privilege which ushered in this council, but has not one word to say of its proceedings. Matthew Paris (or rather Wendover), and Hemingford, speaking of the chancellor with strong prejudice, say that little or nothing was done in the council that was of any benefit to the Church. (Wilkins, Conc. i. 493.)

⁹⁰ This council is mentioned by Benedictus (II., 106). Richard of Devizes (p. 14) mentions that at this council Longchamp gave judgment that the monks should be expelled from Coventry, in accordance with the wishes of Hugh Nunant.

obsidionem de Windleshor, ubi armatus cum quibusdam aliis abbatibus Angliæ, vexillum proprium habens, et plures milites ducens ad multas expensas, plus ibi consilio quam probitate nitens.[†]

Nos vero claustrales tale factum periculosum iudicavimus, timentes consequentiam, ne forte futurus abbas cogatur in propria persona ire in expeditionem bellicam. Datis indutiis illo tempore ivit in Alemanniam, et ibi visitavit regem cum donis plurimis.

Concerning that which befel certain knights who desired to hold a tournament contrary to the wish of the abbot.
A.D. 1193.

quod faciendum convenerunt multi inter Theford et Sanctum Ædmondum, sed prohibuit eos abbas; qui resistentes, votum suum impleverunt.

arms with some other abbots of England, and had his own standard. He had there also with him many knights at great expense, and he gained a reputation rather for skill in the council than for virtue.

But we who were cloistered monks considered this course of action to be fraught with danger, fearing lest some future abbot might be compelled to go to war in person. Then, when a truce had been granted, he went to Germany, and there sought the king with many gifts.

Post reditum regis Ricardi in Angliam, data est licentia torneandi militibus. Ad

After the return of king Richard to England, leave was granted to knights to hold tournaments,⁹² and many gathered between Thetford and St. Edmund's for this purpose. Then the abbot forbade them, but they resisted him, and did all that they desired.

⁹¹ John, acting in concert with Philip Augustus, availed himself of the opportunity afforded by Richard's capture to stir up disorder in England. He captured Windsor, and demanded the fealty of the kingdom from the justiciars. On their refusal, he fortified his castles against them. The justiciars, however, under the direction of Hubert Walter, acted promptly, and soon compelled the surrender of all John's castles, except Nottingham and Tickhill. Windsor was handed over to the custody of Eleanor. (Hoveden, III., 204–7.)

[†]The construction is incomplete.

⁹²The object of this provision is explained by Diceto (II., 120–1), and was to raise money for the king by the sale of licences. The rates at which the licences were sold were twenty silver marks for an earl, ten for a baron, three for a knight holding land, and two for a knight not holding land. (Hoveden, III., 268.)

June 28.

Alia vice venerunt quatuor viginti iuvenes cum sectis suis, filii nobilium, ad vindictam faciendum cum plenis armis ad prædictum locum. Quo perfecto, redierunt in villam istam causa hospitandi. Abbas vero hoc audiens, portas iussit obserari, et eos omnes includi. Crastinus dies erat vigilia apostolorum Petri et Pauli. Fide ergo interposita, promittentes se non exire, nisi per licentiam, manducaverunt omnes cum abbate illo die; sed post prandium, abbate eunte in talamum suum, surrexerunt omnes et inceperunt carolare et cantare, mittentes in villam propter vinum, bibentes, et postea ululantes, abbati et conventui somnum suum auferentes, et omnia in derisum abbatis facientes, et diem usque ad vesperam hoc modo deducentes, nec propter mandatum abbatis voluerunt desistere.

Vespere vero adveniente, seras portarum villæ fregerunt, et vi exierunt. Abbas vero omnes sollemniter excommunicavit, per consilium tamen archiepiscopi Huberti iusticiarii tunc temporis; quorum multi venerunt ad emendationem, absolutionem petentes.

On another occasion twenty-four young men, sons of nobles, came fully armed with their followers to have their revenge at the same place. And when they had made an end, they returned to the town to lodge there. But when the abbot heard of it, he commanded the gates to be closed and all of them to be shut within the town. The following day was the vigil of the apostles Peter and Paul. Therefore, when they had given their word that they would not leave the town without permission, they all ate with the abbot on that day. After the meal, when the abbot had retired to his private chamber, they all arose and began to laugh and sing. And sending to the town for wine, they drank and afterwards shouted loudly, and so they kept the abbot and the monastery from their sleep, and did everything to mock the abbot. So they spent the day until the evening, nor would they cease at the abbot's command.

Finally, when evening was come, they broke the bars of the gates of the city, and forced their way out. The abbot solemnly excommunicated them all, by the advice of archbishop Hubert,⁹³ who was then justiciar, and many of

⁹³Hubert Walter, dean of York (1188), and bishop of Salisbury (1189). He went on the crusade, and was present at the siege of Acre. He was elected archbishop in 1193, and died in 1205.

*Concerning the missions of
the abbot to the papal
court.*

A.D. 1182, 1187, & 1188.

Primi quos misit, statim postquam fuit benedictus, impetraverunt in genere omnes libertates et consuetudines quæ concessæ fuerant prius, etiam tempore schismatis, prædecessoribus suis; postea impetravit, primus inter abbates Angliæ, quod dare posset episcopalem benedictionem sollemniter ubicunque fuerit; et hoc est impetratum sibi et successoribus suis. Postea impetravit exemptionem generalem sibi et successoribus suis ab omnibus archiepiscopis Cantuariensibus, quam abbas H. prædecessor suus specialiter sibi adquisierat. Plures et novas libertates in illis confirmationibus apponi fecit abbas Samson, ad maiorem libertatem et securitatem ecclesiæ nostræ.

Venit quidam clericus ad abbatem portans literas petitorias de redditu ecclesiastico habendo. Et abbas extrahens de scrinio suo septem scripta apostolica cum bullis pendentibus, ita respondit: "Ecce scripta apostolica, quibus diversi apostolici diversis clericis ecclesiastica beneficia petunt dari. Cum

Romam misit
abbas sæpius
nuntios suos,
non vacuos.

them made reparation and sought absolution.

The abbot sent many messengers to Rome, and not in vain. The first whom he sent, immediately after his benediction, obtained in detail all the liberties and rights which had been granted to his predecessors, even in the days of schism. Afterwards he obtained that he might give episcopal benediction wherever he might be, and he was the first of the abbots of England to gain this. This right he won for himself and for his successors. At a later date he acquired complete exemption for himself and for his successors from all the archbishops of Canterbury, a privilege which abbot Hugh had secured for himself alone. In these confirmations of privileges abbot Samson caused the inclusion of many new liberties, to the great freedom and safety of our church.

Then a certain clerk came to the abbot, bearing letters asking for the grant of some ecclesiastical benefice. And the abbot drew from his desk seven apostolic letters, with leaden seals hanging to them, and answered as follows: "See the apostolic letters, whereby different popes seek that ecclesiastical be-

ergo illos pacavero qui prævenerunt, tibi redditum dabo, quia qui prius venit ad molendinum prius molere debet.”

How the abbot met the claim of Earl de Clare to bear the standard of Saint Edmund.

Facta est summonitio magna in hundredo de Risebrigga, ut audiretur querela et rectum comitis de Clara apud Witham. Ipse vero constipatus multis baronibus et militibus, comite Alberico et multis aliis assistentibus, dixit; quod ballivi sui fecerunt ei intelligere, quod ipsi solebant annuatim accipere ad opus suum v. solidos de hundredo et ballivis hundredi, et nunc detinerentur injuste; et allegabat, quod prædecessores sui fuerunt feoffati, ad captionem Angliæ, de terra Alfrici filii Withari,[†] qui quondam fuerat dominus illius hundredi.

Abbas vero sibi consulens, nec de loco se movens, respondit: “Mirum videtur domine comes; quod dicis deficit. Rex Ædwardus dedit Sancto Æd-mundo et carta sua confirmavit hunc

nefices may be given to this or that clerk. When then I have satisfied those who come first I will give you a benefice, since he who first comes to the mill ought to grind first.”

A general summons was issued in the hundred of Risbridge that the complaint and trial of earl de Clare⁹⁴ might be heard at Witham. And he was accompanied by a great crowd of barons and knights, while Earl Alberic⁹⁵ and many others were present, and he said that his officers had given him to understand that they were wont to receive five shillings for his use from the hundred and from the officers of the hundred, which were now wrongfully withheld. He also alleged that his predecessors had been enfeoffed with the land of Alfric, son of Withgar,⁹⁶ who was formerly lord of that hundred, at the time of the conquest of England.

But the abbot, considering in his own mind and not stirring from his place, answered, “My lord earl, your words astonish me! Your case is not proven. King Edward gave to St. Edmund, and

⁹⁴ Richard de Clare, fourth earl of Hertford (d. 1218), one of the twenty-five barons appointed to enforce the observance of Magna Carta.

⁹⁵ Alberic de Vere, first earl of Oxford (d. 1194). For his subsequent quarrel with Samson, see text, p. 106.

[†] Wisgari, Lib. Domesday, 389 b.; Withgari, *ibid.* 390. (Roke.)

⁹⁶ For details as to his holding, see Rokewode, p. 129.

hundredum integre, et de illis v. solidis nulla fit ibi mentio. Dicendum est tibi, pro quo servitio, vel qua ratione exis illos v. solidos." Et comes, habito consilio suorum, respondit se debere portare vexillum Sancti Ædmundi in exercitu, et ob hanc causam illos v. solidos sibi deberi. Et respondit abbas: "Certe, inglorium esse videtur si tantus vir, utpote comes Clarensis, tam parvum donum pro tali servitio recipiat: abbati autem Sancti Ædmundi parvum gravamen est dare v. solidos. Comes R. Bigot se saisiatum tenet, et saisiatum se asserit officio portandi vexillum Sancti Ædmundi, qui illud portavit quando comes Lehecestrie fuit captus et Flandrenses destructi. Thomas etiam de Mendham dicit hoc esse jus suum. Cum vero dirationaveris versus eos hoc esse jus tuum, ego libenter v. solidos, quos quæris, persolvam." Comes vero respondit, se esse locuturum inde cum comite R. cognato suo, et sic res cepit dilationem usque hodie.

confirmed the gift in his charter, this whole hundred, and no mention was made of these five shillings. Do you tell us for what service, or on what grounds, you claim those five shillings!" And the earl, having consulted his men, replied that he had the right to bear the standard of St. Edmund in the host, and for this reason those five shillings were due to him. Then the abbot answered, "In truth, it seems an unworthy thing that so great a man as the earl de Clare should receive so small a gift for so important a service, but it is small harm to the abbot of St. Edmund's to give five shillings. Earl Roger Bigod⁹⁷ holds that he is seised of the land, and declares that he is seised of the duty of bearing the standard of St. Edmund,⁹⁸ and he bore it when the earl of Leicester was taken and the Flemings destroyed. Moreover, Thomas de Mendham⁹⁹ says that this right belongs to him. But when you shall have proved against them that this right is yours, I will willingly pay the five shillings which you demand." Then the earl answered that he would

⁹⁷Second earl of Norfolk, died 1221. One of the twenty-five barons of Magna Carta.

⁹⁸Rokewode (pp. 129–31) quotes a passage from Lydgate's metrical life of St. Edmund on the subject. The whole poem was printed by C. Horstmann in his *Altenglische Legenden*, Heilbron, 1881. (See *Mem.* III., l.–li.) A reproduction of the standard is published as a tailpiece to Rokewode's edition.

⁹⁹He held a knight's fee in Livermere. (See Rokewode, p. 132, who appends other details.) He was possibly descended from a brother of abbot Baldwin, and seems to have been a constable to the monastery.

speak of the matter to earl Roger his relative, and so the matter has not been decided to this day.

*Concerning the case of
Adam de Cokefield.
A.D. 1191.*

Mortuo Roberto de Cokefeld, venit Adam filius

ejus et cum eo parentes sui, comes R. Bigot, et alii multi potentes, et sollicitantes abbatem de tenementis prædicti Adæ, et præcipue de dimidio hundredo de Cosford tenendo per annum censum c. solidorum, tanquam hoc esset jus suum hæreditarium, et dicentes quod pater ejus et avus ejus tenuerunt illud quater xx. annis retro et plus.

Now, when Robert de Cokefield was dead, his son Adam came with his relatives, earl Roger Bigod, and many other powerful men. And they sought from the abbot the holdings of the said Adam, and especially for half the hundred of Cosford, to be held at an annual rent of a hundred shillings, as if this was his by hereditary right, and declared that his father and grandfather had held it for eighty years past and more.

Abbas vero, nacta opportunitate loquendi, apponens duos digitos suos ad duos oculos suos, dixit: “Illa die et illa hora perdam oculos istos, qua alicui concedam hundredum hæreditarie tenendum, nisi rex inde vim mihi faciat, qui mihi potest auferre abbatiam et vitam.” Ostendensque rationem dicti, ait: “Si aliquis teneret hundredum hæreditarie, et ipse forisfaceret versus regem aliquo modo ita quod ex hæreditari deberet, statim vicecomes Sutfolchiæ et ballivi regis saisiant hundredum; et exercerent potestatem suam infra terminos nostros; et si haberent custodiam hundredi, pericli-

But the abbot, when he had opportunity for speaking, put his two fingers to his two eyes, and said, “May I lose these eyes in that day and hour in the which I grant a hundred to any man to hold by hereditary right, unless the king, who is able both to take away the abbacy from me and to deprive me of life, force me to do this thing.” And he gave the reason for this saying, and added, “If any man hold a hundred by hereditary right, and if he commit an offence of any sort against the king for the which he ought to be disinherited, forthwith the sheriff of Suffolk and the officers of the king would

taretur libertas octo hundredorum et dimidii.”[†]

seize the hundred, and would exercise authority within our borders. And if they should have the wardenship of this hundred, then would the liberty of eight hundreds and a half¹⁰⁰ be imperilled.”

Convertensque sermonem ad Adam, ait: “Si tu, qui clamas hæreditatem in illo hundredo, acciperes in uxorem aliquam liberam feminam, quæ teneret saltem unam acram terræ de rege in capite, rex post mortem tuam saisieret totum tenementum tuum et wardam filii tui, si esset infra ætatem; et ita ballivi regis intrarent in hundredum Sancti Ædmundi in præjudicium abbatis. Ad hoc, pater tuus recognovit mihi, se nihil juris hæreditarii vindicare de hundredo; et, quia servitium suum mihi placuit, permisi eum tenere omnibus diebus vitæ suæ, meritis suis exigentibus.”

Then he addressed himself to Adam, and said, “If you, who claim hereditary right in this hundred, were to marry any free woman, who held even a single acre of land from the king in chief, the king after your death would have seisin of the whole of your land and the wardship of your son, if he were a minor, and thus the officers of the king would enter the hundred of St. Edmund to the prejudice of the abbot. For the matter of that, your father made acknowledgment to me that he claimed no hereditary right in that hundred, and because his service pleased me, I permitted him to hold it all the days of his life, as his deserts warranted.”

His dictis, oblata est abbati pecunia multa: sed nec potuit flecti nec prece nec pretio. Convenit tandem inter eos

After he had thus spoken, much money was offered to the abbot, but he could not be turned from his purpo-

¹⁰⁰The grant of this land, which had been held by Emma of Normandy, wife of Ethelred II., was granted to St. Edmund by Edward the Confessor on the occasion of his visit to the monastery in 1044. (*Mem.*, I., 363, cp. Rokewode, pp. 132–33, and Hermannus, in *Mem.*, I., 48.) The hundreds were Thingoe, Thedwastre, Blackburne, Bradborn, Bradmere, Risbridge, Babery, and half that of Exning. (*Mem.*, I., xxviii., note 1.) The charter is printed in Dugdale’s *Monasticon* (III., 138, No. vii., ed. 1846).

[†]See ante, pp. 48, 128.

ita: Adam renunciavit juri suo quod ore dicebat se habere in hundredo, et abbas confirmavit ei omnes alias terras suas, sed de villa nostra de Cokefeld nulla fuit facta mentio, nec cartam creditur inde habere; Semere et Grotene tenebit ad tempus vitæ suæ.

*How the mill which
Herbert the dean had built
was overturned.*

Herbertus decanus levavit molendinum ad ventum super Hauberdun: quod cum audisset abbas, tanta ira excanduit, quod vix voluit comedere, vel aliquod verbum proferre. In crastino, post missam auditam, præcepit sacristæ ut sine dilatione faceret carpentarios suos illuc ire et omnia subvertere, et materiam lignorum in salvam custodiam reponere.

Audiens hoc decanus, venit dicens, se hoc de jure posse facere super liberum feudum suum, nec beneficium venti alicui homini debere denegari, et dixit se velle suum proprium bladum ibi

se either by prayer or present. At the last it was thus agreed between them: Adam abandoned the right which he had verbally claimed in the hundred, and the abbot confirmed to him all his other lands.¹⁰¹ No mention was made, however, of our township of Cokefield, and it is believed that he had no charter concerning it. Semere and Groton he was to hold for the term of his life.

Herbert the dean¹⁰² built a windmill on Haberdon.¹⁰³ When the abbot heard this, he was so wroth that he would hardly eat, or speak a single word. On the morrow, after he had heard mass, he commanded the sacristan that without delay he should cause his carpenters to go thither and overturn everything, and place the wood with which it had been built in safe keeping.

And the dean heard this, and he came, saying that he was by law able to do this on his freehold land, and that the profit which may come from the wind ought to be denied to no man. He

¹⁰¹ The lands confirmed to him were those which he held in Lafham, Whetfeld, Wordsey, Navelton, Lilesey, and Bretenham. (Rokewode, p. 132.)

¹⁰² He received a grant of lands from abbot Ording, his cousing. (Rokewode, p. 133.)

¹⁰³ "Within the bounds of St. Edmundsbury, lies behind Southgate street, extending to the river Lark, contiguous to the parish of Rougham." (Rokewode, p. 133.)

molere, non alienum, ne forte putaretur hoc facere in vicinorum molendinorum detrimentum.

Et respondit abbas adhuc iratus: "Gratias tibi reddo ac si ambos pedes meos amputasses; per os Dei, nunquam panem manducabo, donec fabrica illa subvertatur. Senex es, et scire debuisti, quod nec regi nec justituario licet aliquid immutare vel constituere infra *bannamleucam* sine abbate et conventu; et tu tale quid præsumsisti? Nec hoc sine detrimento meorum molendinorum est, sicut asseris, quia ad tuum molendinum burgenses concurrent, et bladium suum molerent pro beneplacito suo, nec [in] eos possem de jure advertere, quia liberi homines sunt. Nec etiam molendinum celerarii noviter levatum stare sustinerem, nisi quia levatum fuit antequam fui abbas. Recede," inquit, "recede; antequam domum tuam veneris, audies quid fiet de molendino tuo."

Decanus autem timens a facie abbatis, consilio filii sui magistri Stephani, famulos sacristæ præveniens, molendinum illud elevatum a propriis famu-

said also that he intended to grind his own corn there and not that of other men, that he might not be thought to have done this thing to the detriment of neighbouring mills.

And the abbot, still angry, replied, "I thank you as much as if you had cut off both my feet; by the face of God, I will never eat bread until that building be overturned. You are an old man, and you ought to know that neither the king nor his justiciar may change anything or build anything within the jurisdiction of the monastery, without the leave of the abbot and the house. And who are you, that you are so very presumptuous? Nor is this without harm to my mills, as you pretend, for the burghers go to your mill, and grind their corn at their pleasure, while I cannot lawfully hinder them, since they are free men. And I would not allow even the mill of the cellarer, which has been newly built, to stand, had it not been that it was built before I was abbot. Depart," he went on, "depart. Before you come to your house, you will hear what has come to pass in the matter of your mill."

Then the dean, fearing before the face of the abbot, took counsel with his son, master Stephen, and anticipated the servants of the sacristan, and caused

lis suis, sine omni mora, erui fecit; ita quod, venientibus servientibus sacristæ, nichil subvertendum invenerunt.

How the right of the abbot to present to certain churches was disputed, and what befel in the matter.

A.D. 1194 & LATER.

obtinuit. Quasdam etiam calumniatas retinuit; ecclesiam de Westle, de Meringetorp, de Brethenham, de Wenelinga, de Pakeham, de Neutona, de Bradefeld in Norfolcia, medietatem ecclesiæ de Bocsford, ecclesiam de Scaldewella, et ecclesiam de Endgate. Omnes ab aliis calumniatas retinuit, et tres portiones de ecclesia de Dickleburcha ad jus advocacionis suæ revocavit, et illarum portionum tenementa ad liberum feudum ecclesiæ reduxit, salvo servitio quod inde debetur aulæ de Tiveteshala.

A.D. 1188.

Ecclesia vero de Bocsford vacante, cum summonita fuisset inde recognitio, venerunt quinque milites tentantes abbatem, et quærentes quid inde deberent jurare. Abbas autem noluit eis aliquid dare, vel promittere, sed dixit: "Cum ad juramentum

the mill which had been built by his own servants to be destroyed without delay. And so it was, that when the men of the sacristan came there, they found nothing to overthrow.

The right of the abbot to present to certain churches was disputed, and he gained the point. He also retained the right to present in certain other cases where that right had been disputed, in the cases of the churches of Westley, Meringthorpe, Bretenham, Weneling, Pakenham, Newton, and Bradfield in Norfolk, half the church of Boxford, the church of Scaldwell and the church of Endgate.¹⁰⁴ All these he retained against the claim of others, and he recovered the right of presentation to three parts of the church of Dickleburgh. And in those portions he restored the holdings to the freehold of the church, saving the service due thence to the manor of Titshall.

But when the church of Boxford fell vacant, and an inquest was ordered in the matter, five knights came, tempting the abbot, and asking him what they should swear in that matter. But the abbot would not either give or promise them anything, and said, "When the time comes to make oath, say that

¹⁰⁴Rokewode (p. 133-4) collects the evidence of the possession of these churches by St. Edmund.

perventum fuerit, dicite rectum secundum conscientiam vestram." Ipsi vero indignantes recesserunt, et ei per iuramentum suum advocacionem illius ecclesiæ, scilicet ultimam præsentationem,[†] abstulerunt; quam tamen postea recuperavit, multis factis expensis, et datis decem marcis.

Ecclesiam de Hungetona non vacantem sed calumniatam retinuit abbas, tempore Durandi de Hostesli, licet ipse monstraverit in testimonium juris sui cartam W. Norwicensis episcopi, qua continetur, quod Robertas de Valoniis socer ejus dederit illam ecclesiam Ærnaldo Luvello.

Before A.D. 1191.

Vacante medietate ecclesiæ de Hopetuna, mota est controversia inde inter abbatem et Robertum de Ulmo, positoque die concordie[†] apud Hopetonam, post multas altercationes dixit abbas ad prædictum R., nescio quo impetu animi ductus: "Tu jura in propria persona, quod hoc tuum

which is right according to your conscience." Then they went away in anger, and by their oath, in an inquest of darrein presentment,¹⁰⁵ deprived him of the right of presenting to that church. This right he afterwards regained at great expense and by a payment of ten marks.

The abbot retained the church of Honington, which had not been vacant, but to which his claim had been disputed in the time of Daniel de Hostelli, though he produced in evidence of his right a charter of William, bishop of Norwich,¹⁰⁶ wherein it was provided that Robert de Valoniis, his father-in-law, had given that church to Ernald Lovell.

When half the church of Hopeton was vacant, a dispute arose on this matter between the abbot and Robert de Ulmo. And when a day for settling the matter was appointed at Hopeton, after much disputing, the abbot said to the same Robert, being moved thereto by some sudden impulse, "Swear in your own person that this right is

[†] A special assize for trying cases of *Nouvel Disseisin*, *Mort d'Ancestor*, and *Darrein Presentment*, was erected by clause 18 of Magna Charta. See Stubbs, *Const. Hist.* i. 617.

¹⁰⁵ An inquest for the purpose of discovering the person who last presented to a benefice.

¹⁰⁶ William de Turbeville, bishop of Norwich, 1146 to 1174. He was a strong adherent of Becket.

[†] A "dies concordie" was probably a "love day." Comp. Wyclif, in *Grete Sentens of Curs* (Works, Clar. Press, iii. 322); rich men's followers, he says, "schal holde wrongis at love dayes, and bere doun troupe and pore men in here riȝt, by colour of lordis knelynge in þe chapel."

jus est, et ego concedo quod tuum sit.” Cumque miles ille renuisset jurare, delatum est juramentum per consensum utriusque partis sexdecim legalibus de hundredo, qui juraverunt hoc esse jus abbatis. Gilbertus filius Radulfi et Robertus de Cokefeld, domini illius feudi, affuerunt et consenserunt.

*How abbot Samson
disputed with Jordon de
Ros.*

Prosiliens ibi
magister Jordanus de Ros,
habens tam
cartam H. abbatis, quam prædicti R.,
et hinc inde ut uter eorum dirationaret
ecclesiam, ipse personatum haberet,
dixit se esse personam totius ecclesie
et clericum proximo mortuum
fuisse vicarium ejus, reddendo ei annuam
pensionem de illa medietate,
et inde ostendit cartam Walchelini
archidiaconi.

Abbas vero turbatus et iratus erga eum,
nunquam eum in gratiam amicitie recepit,
donec ipse Jordanus in capitulo monachorum
de Theford, instante abbate, reassignavit
in manus episcopi ibi præsentis illam
medietatem præcise, sine omni conditione
et spe recuperandi eam, coram multitudine
clericorum. Quo facto, dixit abbas: “Domine
episcope, ego ex promisso teneor dare
redditum alicui clerico vestro: et

yours, and I will grant that it is.” And when the knight refused to swear, the matter was transferred with the assent of both parties to sixteen legal men of the hundred, who made oath that the right belonged to the abbot. Gilbert Fitz Ralph and Robert de Cokefield, the lords of that fief, were present, and gave their assent.

Then master Jordan de Ros, who had charters both from abbot Hugh and the said Robert, came forward, and addressing both parties, said that whichever of them proved his claim to the church, he ought to have the position of rector. He declared that he was rector of the whole church, and that the recently deceased clerk was his vicar, paying to him an annual income from that half, and in evidence he produced a charter of Walchelin the archdeacon.

Then the abbot was perturbed and angered with him, nor did he ever receive him into his favour until the same Jordan in the chapter of the monks of Thetford, owing to the abbot’s insistence, resigned into the hands of the bishop, who was present there, that half absolutely, without any conditions or hope of recovery, in the presence of a number of clerks. When this had been done, the abbot said, “My lord bishop,

ego dabo hanc medietatem hujus ecclesie cui ex vestris volueritis." Et episcopus petivit, ut amicabilem redderetur eidem magistro Jordano, et sic ex presentatione abbatis eam suscepit Jordanus.

Postea mota est controversia inter abbatem et eundem Jordanum de terra Herardi in Herlava, utrum esset liberum feudum ecclesie, an non. Cumque inde summonita esset recognitio duodecim militum in curia regis facienda, facta est in curia abbatis apud Herlavam per licentiam Rannulfi de Glanvilla, et juraverunt recognitores se nunquam scivisse illam terram fuisse separatam ab ecclesia, sed tamen illam terram debere abbati tale servitium quale debet terra Eustachii, et quædam aliæ terræ laicorum in eadem villa.

Tandem convenit inter eos ita: magister Jordanus in plena curia recognovit illam terram esse laicum feudum, et se nichil inde vindicare, nisi per gratiam abbatis; et illam terram tenebit omnibus diebus vite suæ, reddendo inde annuatim abbati xij. denarios pro omnibus servitiis.

I am bound on a promise to give the revenue to one of your clerks, and I will give the half of this church to whichever of your clerks you will." And the bishop asked that he would restore it in a friendly manner to the same Jordan, and thus Jordan received it by presentation from the abbot.

After this a dispute arose between the abbot and this same Jordan about the land of Herard in Harlow, as to whether or no it was a free fief of the church. And when an inquest of twelve knights was ordered on this matter, to be made in the king's court, by leave of the justiciar Ranulf Glanvill it was made in the court of the abbot at Harlow. And the jurors swore that they had never known that land divided from the church, but yet that this land owed to the abbot the same service as the land of Eustace and certain other land of laymen in the same township owed to him.

At last an agreement was reached between them on the following terms: master Jordan in full court acknowledged that this land was a lay fief, and that he had no rights in it except by the grace of the abbot. And he was to hold that land all the days of his life, paying an annual rent to the abbot for it of twelve pence in commutation of

all services.

*How the author made a list
of the abbot's churches as a
gift to the abbot, and the
names of those churches.*

Cum iuxta
consuetudi-
nem Anglo-
rum multi

multa darent munera abbati, ut domino, die Circumcisionis Dominicæ, cogitavi ego Jocelinus quid dare possem. Et incepti in scriptum redigere omnes ecclesias quæ sunt in donatione abbatis, tam de nostris maneriis quam de suis, et rationabilia pretia earum, sicut possent poni ad firmas, tempore quo blatus mediocriter venditur. Et intrante anno subsequente, dedi abbati schedulam illam pro munere ejus, quam valde gratanter accepit.

Ego vero, quia placui tunc temporis in conspectu ejus, cogitavi in corde meo quod dicerem ei, ut aliquam ecclesiam daret conventui et assignaret in usum hospitalitatis, sicut desideravit quando pauper monachus claustralis fuit, et sicut ipse voluit ante electionem suam, ut fratres jurarent, ut super quemcumque sors abbatiæ caderet, hoc faceret. Sed dum hoc cogitavi, occurrit mihi memoriæ, quod quidam alius prius dixerat ei idem verbum, et audieram abbatem respondentem, se non posse demembrare baroniam, scilicet nec debere minuere libertatem et dignitatem, quam H. abbas et ceteri prædecessores

Now when, in the manner of the English, many men gave many presents to the abbot, as to their lord, on the day of the Circumcision of the Lord, I, Jocelin, thought what I could give to him. And I began to write out a list of all the churches which are in the gift of the abbot, both on our manors and on his, and the right values of the same, according as they might be placed at firm at a time when the price of corn was moderate. And when the beginning of the next year came, I gave to the abbot that schedule as my gift to him, and he received it with great pleasure.

Then I, because I was then pleasing in his sight, "thought in my heart" that I might say to him that he should give some church to the monastery and should assign it to the maintenance of hospitality, as he had himself desired when he was a poor cloistered monk, and as before his election he had wished the brothers to swear, that he on whom the lot of the abbacy should fall should do this. But while I so thought I suddenly called to mind that some other had already said to him this word, and that I had heard the abbot answer that he could not dismember his barony, that is, that he ought not to

sui habuerunt de ecclesiis donandis, qui nullam vel vix contulerunt conventui; et idcirco tacui.

reduce the liberty and dignity which abbot Hugh and others, his predecessors, had possessed in the matter of giving churches, which brought little or no gain to the monastery. And for this cause I was silent.

Scriptum tale fuit:

Now the writing was as follows:—

“Hæ sunt ecclesiæ de maneriis et socagiis abbatis. Ecclesia de Meleford valet xl. libras, Geventona x. marcas, Saxham xij. marcas, Hargrava v. marcas, Brethenham v. marcas, Bocsford centum solidos, major Fornbam c. solidos, Stowa c. solidos, Hunegetona v. marcas, Helmeswell tres marcas, Cotuna xij. marcas, Brocford v. marcas, Palegrava x. marcas, major Hornningesherd v. marcas, Cunegestuna ⁱⁱⁱ^{or} marcas, Herlava xix. marcas, Stapelforda tres marcas, Tiveteshala c. solidos, Wirlingword cum Bedingfeld xx. marcas, Saham vi. marcas, medietas ecclesiæ de Wortham c. solidos, Rungetona xx. marcas, Torp vi. marcas, Wlpet præter pensionem c. solidos, Ressebroc v. marcas, medietas ecclesiæ de Hopetona lx. solidos, Richingale vi. marcas, tres partes ecclesiæ de Dicleburch, quælibet pars valet xxx. solidos et plus, medietas ecclesiæ de Gislingham quatuor marcas, Ichelingham vj. marcas. De ecclesia de Mildenhala, quæ valet xl. marcas, et de medietate

“These are the churches on the manors and socages of the abbot: The church of Melford, valued at forty pounds; Chevington, ten marks; Saxham, twelve marks; Hargrave, five marks; Bretenham, five marks; Boxford, a hundred shillings; the greater Fornham, a hundred shillings; Stowe, a hundred shillings; Honington, five marks; Elmswell, three marks; Cotton, twelve marks; Brocford, five marks; Palgrave, ten marks; the greater Horningsherth, five marks; Kingston, four marks; Harlow, nineteen marks; Stapleford, three marks; Tivetshall, a hundred shillings; Worlingworth and Bedingfeld, twenty marks; Saham, six marks; half the church of Wortham, a hundred shillings; Rungton, twenty marks; Thorp, six marks; Woolpit, with the pension excluded, a hundred shillings; Rushbrook, five marks; half the church of Hopeton, sixty shillings; Richinghall, six marks; three parts of the church of Dickleburgh, at the rate of over thirty shillings for each part; half the church

ecclesiæ de Wederdena quid dicam?
Wenelinge c. solidos, ecclesia de Len
x. marcas, ecclesia de Scaldewelle v.
marcas, de Werketona—.

ch of Gislingham, four marks; Icklingham, six marks; the church of Mildenhall, which is worth forty marks, and half the church of Wederden, some unknown quantity; Weneling, a hundred shillings; the church of Len, ten marks; that of Scaldwell, five marks; Warkton

...

“*Hæ sunt ecclesiæ de maneriis conventus; Mildenhal, Bertona, et Horningsherth xxv. marcas præter pensionem, Rutham xv. marcas præter pensionem, Bradefeld v. marcas, Pakeham xxx. marcas, Suthreia c. solidos, Riseby xx. marcas, Neutona iiij^{or} marcas, Wepsted xiiij. marcas, Fornham Sancte Genovefe xv. marcas, Herningeswell ix. marcas, Fornham Sancti Martini iij. marcas, Ingham x. marcas, Lacford c. solidos, Alvedena x. marcas, Kokefeld xx. marcas, Semere xij. marcas, Grotone v. marcas, medietas ecclesiæ de Frisingfeld xiiij. marcas, Beccles xx. marcas, Broc xv. marcas, Hildercle x. marcas, Werketona x. marcas, Scaldewell v. marcas, Westle v. marcas, ecclesia in Norwico duas marcas præter pensionem alleciorum, et duæ ecclesiæ in Colecestra iii. marcas præter pensionem iiij. solidorum, Chelsword c. solidos, Meringetorp iiij. marcas, medietas ecclesiæ de Bradefeld in Norfolchia tres marcas: staffacres, et*

“These are the churches on the manors of the monastery:—Mildenhall, Barton, and Horningsherth, valued at twenty-five marks, exclusive of the pension; Rougham, fifteen marks, exclusive of the pension; Bradfield, five marks; Pakenham, thirty marks; Southrey, a hundred shillings; Risby, twenty marks; Newton, four marks; Whepstead, fourteen marks; Fornham St. Genevieve, fifteen marks; Herningswell, nine marks; Fornham St. Martin, three marks; Ingham, ten marks; Lackford, a hundred shillings; Alpheton, ten marks; Cokefield, twenty marks; Semere, twelve marks; Grotton, five marks; half the church of Frisingfeld, fourteen marks; Beccles, twenty marks; Broc, fifteen marks; Heldcercle, ten marks; Warkton, ten marks; Scaldwell, five marks; Westley, five marks; a church in Norwich, two marks, excluding the pension of herrings; and two churches in Colchester, three marks, excluding the pension of four shillings; Chelsworth, a

foracres, et tertiæ partes decimarum dominiorum Wrabenesse, vj. marcas.”

How the abbot freed his church from contribution to the fine inflicted on Norfolk and Suffolk.

A.D. 1187.

Duo comitatus Norfolchia et Suthfolchia positi fuerunt in misericordia regis a iusticiariis errantibus propter quoddam forisfactum, et positæ fuerunt l. marcæ super Norfolchiam, et xxx. super Sutfolciam. Et cum quædam portio de illa communi misericordia poneretur super terras Sancti Ædmundi et acriter exigeretur, abbas sine omni mora adiit dominum regem, et invenimus eum apud Clarendonam; ostensaque ei carta regis Ædwardi, quæ liberas facit terras Sancti Ædmundi de omnibus geldis et scottis, præcepit rex per literas suas, ut sex milites de comitatu de Norforchia et sex de Sutfolchia summonerentur ad recognoscendum coram baronibus scaccarii, utrum dominia Sancti Ædmundi deberent esse quietæ de communi misericordia;

hundred shillings; Meringthorp, four marks; half the church of Bradfield in Norfolk, three marks; staffacres, and foracres,¹⁰⁷ and a third of the tithes of the demesnes of Wrabnesse, six marks.”

The two counties of Norfolk and Suffolk were adjudged by the itinerant justices to be fined at the king's discretion for some fault, and fifty marks were imposed upon Norfolk and thirty upon Suffolk. And when some portion of that common fine was placed upon the lands of St. Edmund and sternly exacted, the abbot without delay went to the lord king, and we found him at Clarendon. And when a charter of king Edward, which freed the lands of St. Edmund from all gelds and scot, had been shown to him, the king ordered by his letters that six knights of the county of Norfolk and six of that of Suffolk should be summoned to make inquest in the presence of the barons of the exchequer, as to whether the demesnes of St. Edmund ought to be quit of that general fine.

¹⁰⁷“These staffacres, it would seem, were certain payments or fees due to the abbot's staff or crozier.” (Rokewode, p. 134.) Arnold (*Mem. I.*, 268, note) suggests that the foracres were similar payments for the right of attending the market (*forum*).

et electi sunt tantum sex milites, ut ita parceretur laboribus et expensis, et ideo quia habuerunt terras in utroque comitatu, scilicet Hubertus de Briseword, W. filius Hervei, et Willielmus de Franchevilla, et tres alii, qui Londonias iverunt nobiscum, et ex parte duorum comitatum libertatem ecelesie nostrae recognoverunt. Justiciarii autem assidentes verumdictum illorum inrollaverunt.

*How the abbot disputed
with his knights.
A.D. 1196.*

Abbas Samson iniit certamen cum militibus suis ipse contra omnes, et omnes contra eum,—(proposuit eis quod deberent ei facere integre servitium quinquaginta militum in scutagiis, et in auxiliis, et in consimilibus, quia, ut aiebant, feudos tot militum tenebant,)—quare decem ex illis quinquaginta militibus essent sine servitio, vel qua ratione vel cujus auctoritate illi quadraginta reciperent servitium decem militum. Responderunt omnes una voce talem fuisse consuetudinem, ut decem ex illis semper adjuvarent quadraginta, nec se velle inde, nec debere inde respondere, nec in placitum intrare.

Then six knights were chosen, that so trouble and expense might be saved, and these because they held lands in both counties, namely, Hubert de Brisewood, W. FitzHervey, and William de Francheville, and three others. They went with us to London, and on behalf of the two counties adjudged this liberty to belong to our church. Then the justices who were present enrolled their verdict.

Abbot Samson began a struggle with his knights,¹⁰⁸ he against all and all against him. He declared that they ought to make to him the full service of fifty knights in scutages, aids, and the like, since, as they admitted, they held the fees of that number of knights. He disputed as to why ten of those fifty knights should be free from service, and as to the reason or authority those forty received the service of ten knights. They all with one voice answered that such was the custom, that ten of them should ever help the forty, and they said that on this matter they would neither make answer nor stand trial, as they ought not to do so.

Cum ergo fuissent summoniti inde re- But when they were summoned to ma-

¹⁰⁸ Rokewode (p. 134–5) gives a list of the knights in 3 Ric. I. As to the struggle, compare the text, p. 43.

sponsuri in curia regis, quidam exonerunt se ex industria, quidam apparuerunt in dolo, dicentes, se non respondere sine paribus suis. Alia vice se præsenterunt, qui prius se absenterunt, dicentes similiter, se non debere respondere sine paribus suis, qui in eadem querela fuerunt.

Cumque sic sæpius illuissent abbati, et in magnis et in gravibus expensis vexassent, conquestus est inde abbas H. archiepiscopo tunc iusticiario; qui respondit in generali concione quemlibet militem pro se ipso debere loqui et pro suo proprio tenemento. Et dixit palam abbatem bene scientem et bene potentem esse ad dirationandum jus ecclesiæ suæ contra omnes et singulos.

Comes ergo R. Bigot primus sponte confessus est in iure se debere abbati domino suo servitium trium militum integre, et in releviis et in scutiagiis et in auxiliis, sed de warda facienda ad castellum Norwici tacuit.

Venerunt postea duo ex militibus, postea tres, postea plures, postea sæpe omnes, et ad exemplum comitis idem

ke answer on this matter in the court of the king, some craftily excused themselves and others craftily appeared, the latter saying that they ought not to answer without their peers. On another occasion, those who had at first absented themselves appeared, and said the same thing, that they ought not to make answer without their peers, who were with them in the dispute.

And when they had thus many times mocked the abbot, and had vexed him with great and heavy expenses, the abbot complained on this matter to archbishop Hubert, who was then iusticiar. And he answered in the full council that each knight ought to reply for himself and for his own holding. And he said openly that he knew well, and was well able to secure, the right of his church against all and every one of them.

Then earl Roger Bigod was the first to acknowledge freely that in law he owed his lord, the abbot, the full service of three knights, and both in reliefs, and scutages, and aids. But as to the wardenship of the castle of Norwich, he was silent.

After that there came two of the knights, and then three, and then more, and eventually almost all, and, following

servitium recognoverunt; et quia non sufficebat recognitio inde facta in curia Sancti Ædmundi, secum ducebant omnes abbas Lundonias ad suos sumptus, et uxores et mulieres, qui erant terrarum hæredes, ut recognitionem facerent in curia regis, et singuli singulos chirographos acceperunt.

Albericus de Ver, et Willelmus de Hastings, et duo alii fuerunt in servitio regis ultra mare, quando hæc fiebant, et ideo loquela de eis differri debuit. Albericus de Ver ultimus erat qui abbati resistebat; abbas vero averia ejus cepit et vendidit, unde oportuit eum venire in curiam et respondere sicut pares sui. Inito ergo consilio, recognovit tandem Sancto Ædmondo et abbati jus suum.

Superatis ergo omnibus militibus, ex tali victoria tale lucrum poterit abbati,[†] nisi abbas voluerit aliquibus parceret; quotiens xx. solidi ponentur super scutum, remanebunt abbati xij. libræ, et si plus vel minus ponatur, plus vel minus ei remanebit secundum debitam portionem. Item solebat abbas et antecessores sui semper in fine xx. ebdomadarum dare vij. solidos ad war-

the example of the earl, admitted the same service. And as a recognition made on this matter in the court of St. Edmund was not enough, the abbot took with him to London at his own expense the wives and women, who were heiresses of lands, that they might make recognition in the king's court, and each received a separate charter.

Alberic de Vere and William de Hastings, and two others were in the service of the king, across the sea, when these things were done, and therefore this dispute had to await final settlement. Alberic de Vere was the last who resisted the abbot; but the abbot took and sold his cattle, by which means he was driven to come to the court and make answer as his peers had done. And so he took counsel, and at last recognised the right as belonging to St. Edmund and the abbot.

Therefore when all the knights had been overcome, the abbot might have made great gain of money from so notable a victory, had he not desired to spare some of them. For whenever twenty shillings are charged on a fee, there will remain for the abbot twelve pounds, and if more or less be charged, then more or less will remain according to the due proportion. Further,

[†] Desiderari videtur "accrescere." Roke.

dam castelli de Norwico[†] de sua bursa pro defectu trium militum, quos comes R. Bigot tenet de Sancto Ædmondo, et solebant singuli milites de quatuor constabiliis dare xxviii. denarios, quando intrabant ad wardas faciendas, et unum denarium marescaldo, qui illos denarios colligebat, et ideo xxviii. denarios et non amplius dabant, quia decem milites de quinta constabilia solebant adjuvare ceteros quadraginta; ita quod, ubi debebat dare tres solidos integre, dederunt tantummodo xxix. denarios, et qui debebat intrare ad wardam faciendam in fine iiiij^{or} mensium, intravit in fine xx. ebdomadarum. Modo autem dant singuli milites plene tres solidos et remanet abbatati superexcrementia quæ excrescit ultra xxix. denarios, unde poterit se adquietare de prænominatis vii. solidis.

the abbot and his predecessors were wont at the end of twenty weeks to give seven shillings for the wardship of the castle of Norwich from his own money, to supply the defect of the three knights; fees which earl Roger Bigod holds of St. Edmund. And all the knights of the four constabularies used to pay twenty-eight pence when they began to make wards, and one penny to the marshal who collected those pennies, and they gave twenty-eight pence and no more, because the ten knights of the fifth constabulary were wont to assist the other forty. Therefore, when they ought to have given three shillings in full, they gave only nineteen pence, and one who should have entered upon the duty of making ward at the end of four months, entered at the end of twenty weeks. Now, however, all the knights paid three shillings in full, and the amount by which it has been increased beyond twenty-nine pence remains to the abbot, wherefore he can repay himself the said seven shillings.

Ecce patet quam vim obtinuerunt comminationes abbatis, quas fecit die prima, quando recepit homagium de

Thus was seen how the threats of the abbot, which he uttered on his first day when he received the homage of his

[†]In 1173 the careless guard kept at Norwich had been the cause of the town's being taken and sacked by the Flemings (Will. de Neub. ii. 30); it was therefore to be expected that the defences of the castle would in after times be looked to more closely.

militibus suis, sicut præscriptum est, quando singuli milites promiserunt ei xx. solidos, et statim se retraxerunt, nolentes dare ei in summa nisi xl. libras, dicentes quod decem milites deberent adjuvare ceteros quadraginta in auxiliis et wardis faciendis, et in omnibus consimilibus.

Est autem quædam terra in Tivette-shale de feudo abbatis quæ reddere solet vigilibus de castello Norwici *Waite-fe*, id est, xx. solidos per annum, scilicet quinque solidos in quolibet jejunio quatuor temporum. Antiqua est hæc consuetudo, quam abbas libenter vellet mutare, si posset; sed impotentiam suam considerans in hac parte adhuc tacet et dissimulat.

*Concerning Henry of
Essex.*

Ad beati regis et martyris memoriam diffusius dilatandam, præscriptis non incontinue, ut credimus, istud connectimus; non quod ego tantillus et nullius fere momenti istud memoriali titulo commendaverim,[†] quia dominus Jocelinus, elemosinarius noster, vir religionis eximiæ, potens in

knights, had their fulfilment, when, as has been related, all the knights promised him twenty shillings and at once went back on their promise, refusing to give him a total sum of more than forty pounds in making aids and performing wards and in all like things.

In Tivetshall there is some land on the fee of the abbot which used to pay to the watchmen of the castle of Norwich waite-fee, which is to say, twenty shillings a year, at the rate of five shillings at each of the four fasting times. This is an ancient custom, which the abbot was very anxious to change if he could. But as he saw his weakness in this matter, he still is silent and conceals his wish.

In order to spread far and wide the memory of the blessed king and martyr, we have added what follows to our writings, not improperly we hope.¹⁰⁹ It is not that I, who am unimportant and almost of no account at all, should put this out with an historical title, but that master Jocelin, our almoner, a man of renowned piety, one mighty in word

¹⁰⁹ This passage, as would appear from the terms of the first paragraph, is an interpolation by some other writer than Jocelin. Gervase (i., 165) mentions the conduct of Henry of Essex on the Welsh expedition, and the disastrous result on the English army. He adds, "Owing to this accident, Henry, who had been the noblest among the princes of England, suffered everlasting shame and disinheritor." Diceto (I., 310) mentions the duel. (Cp. *Mem.* I., 272, note.)

[†] "Sed" desideratur. Ro.

sermone et opere, ad potestatis preces imperiosas, sic tandem exorsus est; quæ mea reputo, quia, juxta præceptum Senecæ, quicquid ab aliquo bene dictum est, mihi inpræsumptuose ascribo.^{††}

and deed, at the pressing request of the powers that be, at last thus began it in this way; and I regard the work as mine, since, according to the precept of Seneca, I may without presumption ascribe to myself whatever has been well said by another.

Cum venisset abbas apud Radingas, et nos cum eo, sicut decuit, suscepti sumus a monachis ejusdem loci; inter quos Henricus de Essexia devotus occurrit, qui, nacta loquendi opportunitate, abbati et omnibus assidentibus narravit qualiter victus fuit in duello, et qualiter Sanctus Ædmundus et ob quam causam confudit eum in ipsa hora pugnandi. Ego vero narrationem ejus in scriptum redegei, domino abbate præcipiente, et scripsi in hæc verba:

When the abbot was come to Reading, and we with him, we were rightly received by the monks of that place. And among them was Henry of Essex as a professed monk, who, when he had a chance to speak to the abbot and to those who were present, told us how he had been conquered in a trial by battle, and how and why St. Edmund confounded him in the very hour of conflict. But I wrote down his tale by command of the lord abbot, and I wrote it also in these words.

Quum non potest malum vitari nisi cognitum, actus et excessus Henrici de Estsexia memoriali scripto tradere dignum ducimus, ad cautelam quidem, non ad usum. Utilis et indemnis so-

Inasmuch as it is impossible to avoid unknown evil, we have thought it well to commit to writing the acts and crimes of Henry of Essex, that they may be a warning, and not an example. Sto-

[†]The cowardice of Henry of Essex, the hereditary standard bearer, who, in 1157, during an expedition into Flintshire, when the Welsh made a sudden attack, dropped the standard, and so brought the king and army into great peril, made a great sensation. Gervase (i. 165, Rolls ed.) briefly summarises the whole story; Diceto (*Ymag. Hist.* i. 310, Rolls ed.) records the duel fought between Henry and Robert de Montfort in 1163, and its result. Carlyle, with even more than his usual force and beauty of language, has made use of the monk's narrative in "Past and Present." Who this monk was is not known. The compiler in Bod. 240, p. 654, says it was Jocelin himself; but that seems inconsistent with the tenor of the opening sentence.

^{††}Many things resembling this sentiment occur in the 109th Epistle of Seneca; but probably the passage meant is somewhere else in his works.

let esse castigatio, quam persuadent exemplaria.

Prædictus itaque Henricus dum floret in prosperis, inter primates regni vir magni nominis habebatur, genere clarus, armis conspicuus, regis signifer, verendus omnibus privilegio potestatis. Ceteri comprovinciales ecclesiam beati Ædmundi regis et martyris in rebus et redditibus ampliabant; ille vero non solum clausis oculis hoc præteribat, verum etiam vi et injuriis, et per injuriam, annuum redditum quinque solidorum abstraxit, et in proprios usus convertit.

Processu vero temporis, cum in curia Sancti Ædmundi ageretur causa de raptu cujusdam virginis, accessit idem H. protestans et asserens, loquelam illam in curia sua debere tractari ratione nativitatis ejusdem puellæ, quæ in dominio suo de Lailand nata fuerat. Cujus rationis prætextu, curiam Sancti Ædmundi in itineribus et innumerabilibus expensis longo temporis tractu vexare præsumpsit.

A.D. 1157.

In his interim
et consimili-

ries often convey an useful and salutary warning.

The said Henry, then, while he enjoyed great prosperity, had the reputation of a great man among the nobles of the realm, and he was renowned by birth, noted for his deeds of arms, the standard-bearer of the king, and feared by all men owing to his might. And when others who lived near him enriched the church of the blessed king and martyr Edmund with goods and rents, he on the contrary not only shut his eyes to this fact, but further violently, and wrongfully, and by injuries took away the annual rent of five shillings, and converted it to his own use.

In the course of time, moreover, when a case arose in the court of St. Edmund concerning a wrong done to a certain maiden, the same Henry came thither, and protested and declared that the trial ought to be held in his court because the place where the said maiden was born was within his lordship of Lailand. With the excuse of this affair, he dared to trouble the court of St. Edmund for a long while with journeyings and countless charges.

But fortune, which had assisted his wishes in these and other like matters,

bus arridens ad votum, prosperitas perpetui subintulit causam doloris, et, sub fantasia jocundi principii, tristes in eum exitus moliebatur; ex usu etenim est ei arridere ut sæviat, blandiri ut fallat, extollere ut deprimat. Nec mora; insurrexit in eum Robertus de Monteforti, ipsius consanguineus, nec genere nec viribus impar, in conspectu principum terræ damnans et accusans eum de proditione regis. Asseruit nempe eum in expeditione belli apud Waliā in difficili transitu de Coleshelle vexillum domini regis fraudulenter abjecisse, et mortem ejus sublimi voce proclamasse, et in præsidium ejus venientes, in fugam convertisse. In rei veritate, prædictus Henricus de Essexia inclitum regem Henricum secundum, Walensium fraudibus interceptum, diem clausisse credidit extremum; quod revera factum fuisset, nisi Rogerus comes Clarenensis, clarus genere et militari clarior exercitio, cum suis Clarensibus maturius occurrisset, et domini regis vexillum elevasset, ad corroborationem et animationem totius exercitus.

brought upon him a cause for lasting grief, and after mocking him with a happy beginning, planned a sad conclusion for him; for it is the custom of fortune to smile, that she may rage; to flatter, that she may deceive; and to raise up only that she may cast down. For presently there rose against him Robert de Montfort, his relative, and a man not unequal to him in birth and power, and slandered him in the presence of the princes of the land, accusing him of treason to the king. For he asserted that Henry, in the course of the Welsh war, in the difficult pass of Coleshill, had treacherously cast down the standard of the lord king, and proclaimed his death in a loud voice; and that he had induced those who were coming to the help of the king to turn in flight. As a matter of fact, the said Henry of Essex believed that the renowned king Henry the Second, who had been caught in an ambush by the Welsh, had been slain, and this would have been the truth, had not Roger, earl of Clare,¹¹⁰ a man renowned in birth and more renowned for his deeds of arms, hastened up quickly with his men of Clare, and raised the standard of the lord king, which revived the strength and

¹¹⁰In the Latin there is here a play upon words: "comes Clarenensis, clarus," etc., which cannot be rendered in a translation.

courage of the whole army.

Henrico quidem resistente
^{A.D. 1163.}
te prædicto Roberto in concione, et
objecta penitus inficiente, evoluto
breui temporis spatio, ad corporale
duellum perventum est. Convenerunt
autem apud Radingas pugnaturi in
insula[†] quadam satis abbatiae vicina;
convenit et gentium multitudo, visura
quem finem res sortiretur. Et factum
est, cum Robertus duris et crebris
ictibus viriliter intonasset, et audax
principium fructum victoriae promi-
sisset, Henricus parumper deficiens
circumquaque respexit, et ecce in con-
finio terrae et fluminis vidit gloriosum
regem et martyrem Ædmundum ar-
matum et quasi in aere volitantem,
et cum quadam vultus austeritate
versus eum crebro capitis motu mi-
nas iracundiae et indignationis plenas
prætententem; vidit et alium cum
eo militem, Gilbertum de Cerivilla,
non solum quantum ad apparentiam
gradu dignitatis inferiorem, sed et ab
humeris supra statura minorem, oculo-
los quasi indignantes et iracundos in
eum convertere. Hic ad præceptum
ipsius Henrici, vinculis et tormentis
afflictus, diem clausit extremum, in-
trusus occasione et accusatione uxoris

Then Henry resisted the said Robert
in the council, and utterly denied the
charge, so that after a little while the
matter came to a trial by battle. Then
when they met at Reading to fight on
an island somewhat near the abbey,
there gathered there also a multitude
of persons, to see how the affair would
end. And it came to pass, that when
Robert manfully made his armour
ring again with hard and frequent
blows, and his bold beginning pro-
mised the fruit of victory, Henry's
strength began to fail him a little. And
as he looked round about, behold! on
the edge of land and water, he saw the
glorious king and martyr Edmund,
armed and as it were flying in the
air, and looking towards him with an
angry countenance, often shaking his
head in a threatening manner, and
showing himself full of wrath. And
Henry also saw with the saint ano-
ther knight, Gilbert de Cereville, who
appeared not only less than the saint
in point of dignity, but also head and
shoulders shorter; and he looked on
him with accusing and angry glances.
This Gilbert, by order of the said Hen-
ry, afflicted with bonds and tortures,
had died, as the result of an accusation

[†] The fight on the Thames eyot, "now a verdant meadow," is still traditionally remembered at Reading; see Murray's Handbook for Berks., p. 35.

Henrici, quæ propriam nequitiam in innocentem deflectens, dicebat se petitiones precarias Gilberti de illicito amore non posse sustinere.

Hos itaque, tam sollicitus quam timidus, intuens, Henricus antiquum scelus novum ferre pudorem recordatur. Et jam totus desperans, et rationem in impetum convertens, impugnantis non defendentis, assumpsit officium. Qui dum fortiter percussit, fortius percussus est; et dum viriliter impugnabat, virilius inugnabatur. Quid multa? victus occubuit.

Cumque mortuus crederetur, ad magnam petitionem magnatum Angliæ, ejusdem Henrici consanguineorum, concessum est monachis ejusdem loci, ut darent ejus corpus sepulturæ. Postea tamen convaluit, et, resumpto sanitatis beneficio, sub regulari habitu, superioris ævi labem deterisit, et, longam dissolutæ ætatis ebdomadam uno saltem sabbato curans venustare studia virtutum in frugem felicitatis excoluit.

brought against him by the wife of Henry, who cast the penalty for her own ill-doing on an innocent man, and said that she could not endure the evil suggestions of the said Gilbert.

When he saw these sights, then, Henry grew alarmed and fearful, and called to mind that an old crime brings new shame. And now, giving up all hope, and abandoning skilful fighting for a blind rush, he took the part of one who attacks rather than that of one who defends himself. And when he gave hard blows, he received harder; and while he fought manfully, he was more manfully resisted. In a word, he fell conquered.

And as he was thought to be dead, in accordance with the earnest request of the magnates of England, the relatives of the said Henry, the monks of that place were allowed to give burial to his corpse. But he afterwards revived, and when he had regained the blessing of health, under the regular habit, he wiped out the stain of his former life, and taking care to purify the long week of his dissolute past with at least one sabbath, he cultivated the study of the virtues, to bring forth the fruit of happiness.

*How the abbot deceived
the bishop of Ely for the
good of his church.*

Galfridus Ridelus episcopus Eliensis petiit ab abbate materiam lignorum ad quædam magna ædificia facienda apud Glemesford; quod et abbas concessit, sed invitus; non ausus tunc eum offendere. Abbate moram apud Meleford faciente, venit quidam clericus episcopi, rogans ex parte domini sui ut ligna promissa possent capi apud Ælmeswell; et erravit in verbo, dicens Ælmeswell, ubi dicere deberet Ælmessethe, quod est nomen cujusdam nemoris de Meleford. Et mirabatur abbas de mandato, quia talia ligna non potuerunt inveniri apud Ælmeswell.

Quod cum audisset Ricardus forestarius de eadem villa, dixit occulte abbati, episcopum misisse proxima ebdomada præterita carpentarios suos tanquam exploratores in boscum de Ælmessethe, et eligisse[†] meliora ligna totius bosci, et signa sua imposuisse. Quo audito, subito comperit abbas nuntium episcopi errasse in mandato, respondens ei se facere libenter voluntatem episcopi.

In crastino recedente nuntio, sta-

[†]lege, elegisse.

Geoffrey Ridel, bishop of Ely, sought from the abbot a supply of wood for making some great buildings at Glemesford, and the abbot granted this request against his will, for he did not at that time dare to offend the bishop. But while the abbot was staying at Melford, a certain clerk of the bishop came and asked on behalf of his lord that they might be allowed to take the said wood at Elmswell; and he made a mistake in his speech, saying Elmswell where he should have said Elmset, the latter being the name of a certain wood at Melford. And the abbot marvelled at the message, for such wood was not to be found at Elmswell.

Then when Richard the forester of the same township had heard this, he told the abbot privately that the bishop in the preceding week had sent his carpenters as spies into the wood of Elmset, and that they had chosen the best trees in the whole wood, and marked them with their signs. At this news, the abbot saw at once that the messenger of the bishop had delivered his message wrongly, and told him that he would gladly meet the wish of the bishop.

On the morrow, after the messenger

tim post missam auditam ivit abbas cum carpentariis suis in boscum prænominatum, et omnes quercus prius signatas, cum plusquam centum aliis, suo signo signari fecit ad opus Sancti Ædmundi, et ad culmen magnæ turris, præcipiens ut quantocius succiderentur.

had departed, as soon as he had heard mass, the abbot went with his carpenters into the said wood, and caused all the oaks which had been already marked, and more than a hundred others, to be marked for the use of St. Edmund, and for the completion of the great tower; and he ordered that they should be cut down as rapidly as possible.

Episcopus autem, cum ex responso sui nuntii intellexit ligna prædicta apud Ælmeswell esse capienda, eundem nuntium multis contumeliis affectum remisit ad abbatem, ut verbum in quo erraverat corrigeret, dicendo Ælmesethe non Ælmeswell; sed antequam venisset ad abbatem, jam succisa erant omnia ligna quæ episcopus desideraverat, et carpentarii sui signaverant. Unde et eum ligna alia et alibi capere oporteret si vellet. Ego autem, quando hoc videbam, ridebam, et dicebam in corde meo: "Sic ars deluditur arte."

But the bishop, when he learned from the report of his messenger that the needed wood was to be taken at Elmswell, overwhelmed the messenger with much abuse, and sent him back to the abbot that he might correct the word which he had said wrongly, that is, when he said Elmswell for Elmset. But before he had come to the abbot, all the trees, which the bishop desired, and which his carpenters had marked, had been cut down. It was therefore necessary for the bishop to take other trees and in another place, if he would. But I, when I saw this, laughed and said in my heart, "Thus craft is defeated by craft."

How there were disputes concerning the appointment of bailiffs for the town.
A.D. 1182.

Mortuo Hugone abbate, voluerunt custodes abbatiæ deponere præfectos villæ Sancti Ædmundi et

On the death of abbot Hugh, the wardens of the abbacy desired to depose the bailiffs of the town of St. Edmund's, and to appoint new bailiffs by their authority, alleging that this right pertained to the king, in whose hand

novos constituere sua auctoritate, dicentes hoc pertinere ad regem, in cuius manu abbatia fuit. Nos autem inde conquerentes, misimus nuntios nostros domino Ranulfo de Glanvilla, tunc justiciario; qui respondit se bene scire xl. libras debere reddi de villa annuatim sacristiæ nostræ, et nominatim ad luminaria ecclesiæ; et dixit H. abbatem pro voluntate sua et in thalamo suo sine consensu conventus præfecturam dedisse quotiens voluit et quibus voluit, salvis xl. libris altari reddendis; et ideo non esse mirandum si bailivi regis hoc ipsum exigerent ex parte regis, et acerbe loquens, nos omnes monachos stultos nominavit, ex hoc quod passi sumus abbatem nostrum talia fecisse; non advertens quod monachorum summa religio tacere est, et excessus suorum prælatorum clausis oculis præterire; nec attendens quod baratores dicuntur, si in aliquo, sive juste sive injuste, contradicimus, et quandoque rei læsæ majestatis, vel carceris vel exilii pœna damnamur; unde et sanius consilium mihi et consimilibus meis videtur, ut confessores, quam ut moriamur martyres.

the abbey was. But when we made complaint on this matter and sent our messengers to the lord Ranulf Glanvill, who was then justiciar, he answered that he was well aware that forty pounds ought to be rendered from the town¹¹¹ to our sacristan annually, and especially for the lights of the church. And he added that abbot Hugh, according to his pleasure and in his chamber, without the assent of the monastery, had given the office of bailiff as often and to whomsoever he would, saving the forty pounds of revenue for the altar; it was therefore not remarkable if the officials of the king exacted this right on the king's behalf. Then in rough tones, he called all us monks fools in that we had allowed our abbot to do such things, not thinking that the chief duty of monks is to keep silence, and to shut their eyes to all the faults of their prelates, nor thinking of the fact that we are called cheats if in any matter, either rightly or wrongly, we raise opposition, and that sometimes we are accused of treason, and sometimes condemned to imprisonment and exile. For these reasons, it seems the wiser counsel to me and those in my position, rather to die as confessors than as martyrs.

¹¹¹ Rokewode (p. 136) states that Eugenius III. confirmed the appropriation of the rents of the town to the use of the sacrist, in the days of abbot Ording.

Redeunte ad nos nuntio nostro, et nar-
rante quæ audierat et viderat, quasi
inviti et coacti inivimus consilium ut,
communi voluntate et conventus et
custodum abbatiaë, deponerentur ve-
teres præfecti villæ, reluctantæ Sam-
sone subsacrista nobiscum, quantum
potuimus.

Samson autem abbas factus, non im-
memor injuriæ conventui illatæ, in
crastino Paschæ proximæ post electio-
nem suam fecit conveniri in capitulo
nostro milites et clericos et multitudi-
nem burgensium, et coram omnibus
dixit istam villam pertinere ad con-
ventum et ad altare, nominatim ad
inveniendâ luminaria ecclesiæ; et se
velle renovare antiquam consuetu-
dinem, ut coram conventu et cum
communi assensu tractaretur de præ-
fectura villæ et consimilibus quæ ad
conventum pertinebant.

Et nominati sunt eadem hora duo bur-
genses, Godefridus et Nicholaus, ut es-
sent præfecti, habitaque disputatione
de cujus manu cornu acciperent, quod

When our messenger returned to us
and told what he had heard and seen,
we took counsel, as it were unwillingly
and under compulsion, to the effect
that, by the common action of the mo-
nastery and of the wardens of the ab-
bey, the old bailiffs of the town should
be deposed; this was as far as possible
to be a joint act, though Samson, who
was our subsacristan, was opposed to
the plan.

At a later date, when he had been ma-
de abbot, Samson was not unmindful
of the injury which had been done to
the abbey, and on the morrow of the
Easter next after his election, he cau-
sed the knights and clerks and many
burgesses to be gathered together in
our chapter, and in the presence of all
of them said that this town belonged
to the monastery and to the altar, espe-
cially in the matter of finding lights
for the church. And he said that he
wished to renew the old custom, that
all that concerned the bailiwick of the
town and such like matters pertaining
to the monastery, should be decided
in the presence of the monastery and
by common assent.

And at that same time two burghers,
Godfrey and Nicholas, were named
bailiffs, and there was a dispute as to
the question from whose hand they

dicitur *mot-horn*, tandem illud receperunt de manu prioris, qui post abbatem caput est de rebus conventus. Illi autem duo præfecti bailivam suam pacifice custodierunt per plures annos, quousque dicerentur remissi in iustitia regis custodienda: dictante autem ipso abbate, ut major securitas daretur conventui super hac re, remotis illis, recepit Hugo sacrista villam in manu sua, novos servientes constituens, qui ei de præfectura responderent; sed processu temporis, nescio quomodo, postea novi præfecti substituti sunt alibi quam in capitulo, et sine conventu; unde vel simile vel majus timetur periculum post decessum abbatis Samsonis, quam fuerit post decessum Hugonis abbatis.

should receive the horn, which is called moot-horn.¹¹² At last they received it from the hand of the prior, who after the abbot is the chief man in the affairs of the monastery. Then those two bailiffs peacefully exercised their jurisdiction for many years, until they were said to be slack in administering the justice of the king. Then at the suggestion of the abbot himself, that greater security might be given to the monastery in this matter, they were removed, and the sacristan Hugh received it into his hand. He appointed new servants, who were responsible to him for the bailiwick. In course of time, however—I know not for what reason—new bailiffs were again appointed elsewhere than in the chapter, and without the assent of the monastery, on which account there was a fear of the same or greater danger after the death of abbot Samson than there had been after the death of abbot Hugh.

Quidam autem ex fratribus nostris, de amore et familiaritate abbatis plenius confidens, nacta opportunitate, et modeste sicut decuit, convenit inde abbatem, asserens inde murmur fieri in conventu. Abbas vero, his auditis, diu tacuit, ac si aliquantulum inde turbare-

And one of our brothers, who was fully confident of the love and friendship of the abbot, took an opportunity to address the abbot on this matter, with due modesty, and he declared that the monastery murmured for this cause. When the abbot heard this he was long

¹¹²The horn which was sounded to summon to assemblies of the moots or meetings, whether of the shire or boroughs. (Cp. Rokewode, p. 136–7.)

tur, et tandem ita dicebatur respondisse: "Nonne ego, ego sum abbas? nonne mea interest disponere de rebus ecclesiæ mihi commissæ, dummodo sapienter egero et secundum Deum? Si defectus fuerit regiæ justitiæ in villa ista, ego calumniatus ero, ego ero summonitus, mihi incumbet labor itineris et expensæ, et defensio villæ et pertinentium; ego stultus habebor, non prior, non sacrista, non conventus; sed ego, qui caput eorum sum et esse debeo. Per me et consilium,† Domino adjuvante, erit villa servata indeniniter pro posse meo, et salvæ erunt quadraginta libræ annuatim reddendæ altari. Murmurent fratres; detrahant; dicant inter se, quod voluerint; pater eorum sum et abbas; quamdiu vixero, honorem meum alteri non dabo."

His dictis, recessit monachus, qui eadem responsa referebat. Ego autem de talibus verbis mirabar, et contrariis motibus mecum disputavi; tandem dubitare coactus, eo quod regula ju-

silent, as if he were somewhat troubled for this, and at last, so it is said, answered as follows: "Am not I, even I, the abbot? Is it not my affair to dispose of the goods of the church committed to my care, provided that I act wisely and according to God? If there be a default in the administration of the king's justice in this town, I shall be accused on the matter, I shall be summoned to the court, on me will fall the labour of the journey and the expense, and the defence of the town and of that which pertains thereto. It will be I who am regarded as a fool, and not the prior or the sacristan or the monastery. No, it will be I, who am and ought to be their head. By my means and by my counsel, with God's help, the town shall be preserved unharmed so far as in me lies, and the forty pounds of annual rent to the altar shall be preserved. Let the brothers murmur; let them blame me; let them say what they will among themselves. I am their father and abbot, and while I live, I will not give mine honour to another."

When he had so spoken, the monk left him and told his answers. But I marvelled at such words, and thought the thing over in secret and with care. At last I was forced to doubt still, since

† "Meum," desiderari videtur. Roke.

ris dicit et docet, ut omnia sint in dispositione abbatis.[†]

*How abbot Samson
disputed with the men of
London about the payment
of tolls.*

loneo ad nundinas Sancti Ædmundi; plures tamen inviti et coacti dederunt illud; unde multus tumultus et commotio magna facta est inter cives Lundoniæ in suo hustengio. Convenientes ergo inde, abbati S. dixerunt, se quietos esse debere per totam Angliam auctoritate cartæ, quam habuerunt de rege Henrico secundo.

Quibus abbas respondit, quod, si necesse esset, bene posset trahere regem in warrantum, quod nunquam aliquam cartam eis fecit in præjudicium ecclesiæ nostræ, nec in detrimentum libertatum Sancti Ædmundi, cui sanctus Ædwardus *tollum* et *themum* et omnia jura regalia concessit et confirmavit, ante conquestum Angliæ; et quod rex Henricus dedit Limdoniensibus quie-

the rule of law says and teaches us that all things are in the disposition of the abbot.

Mercatores
Lundonienses
voluerunt esse
quieti de the-

The merchants of London wished to be quit from toll at the fair of St. Edmund's. Many, however, though unwillingly and under compulsion, paid it, and on this account many tumults and a great disturbance occurred between the citizens of London in their court. Wherefore, having held a meeting about the matter, they sent word to abbot Samson that they ought to be quit of toll throughout all England, under the authority of the charter which they held from king Henry the Second.

To this the abbot answered that, were it needful, he could easily bring the king to warrant him that he had never made them a charter in prejudice of our church, or to the injury of the liberties of St. Edmund, to whom the holy Edward had granted and confirmed toll and theam¹¹³ and all regalian rights before the conquest of England. And he added that king Henry

[†] Grat. Decr. Pars Secunda, xviii. 2, 9: "Abbatis sollicitudo, ad quem potestas tota pervenire convenit."

¹¹³ These two words are defined in Stubbs' *Select Charters* (glossary) as follows: "Tol, duty on imports. Theam, the right of compelling the person in whose hands stolen or lost property was found to vouch to warranty, that is, to name the person from whom he received it." On the other hand, the terms, in conjunction with infangenthef, are often used as a mere jingle which has no particular meaning; and taken together, tol and theam may be said to mean the ordinary rights conferred on towns—that is, a vague concession.

tantiam thelonei per dominia sua propria, ubi poterat dare eam; quia in villa Sancti Ædmundi non poterat, quod suum non erat.

Audientes hæc Lundonienses, communi consilio decreverunt, quod nulus ex eis veniret ad nundinas Sancti Ædmundi, et duobus annis absentaverunt se, unde magnum detrimentum habuerunt nundinæ nostræ, et oblatio sacristæ minorata fuit in magna parte. Tandem, episcopo Lundonensi et aliis pluribus interloquentibus, ita convenit inter nos et eos, quod ipsi venirent ad nundinas, et aliqui ex eis darent theloneum, sed statim eisdem redderetur, ut sub tali velamento utrimque libertas servaretur.

Sed processu temporis, cum fecisset abbas concordiam cum militibus suis, et quasi in pace dormisset, ecce iterum “Philistiim super te, Samson!” Ecce Londonienses, una voce comminantes, quod domos lapideas, quas abbas eodem anno ædificaverat, ad terram prosternerent, vel contra, namum de hominibus Sancti Ædmundi in centuplum acciperent, nisi abbas citius emendaret injuriam cis illatam a præ-

had given to the Londoners quittance from toll throughout his own demesnes, where he had the right to give it; for in the city of St. Edmund’s he could not give it, for it was not his to give.

When the Londoners heard this, they decreed with common assent that none of them should come to the fair of St. Edmund’s, and for two years they did absent themselves, whence our fair suffered great loss, and the offerings in our sacristy were greatly diminished. Eventually, when the bishop of London and many others had mediated, an agreement was reached between them and us whereby they should come to the fair, and some of them should pay toll, but this should be at once returned to them, that by such a device the privilege of both parties might be maintained.

But as time went on, when the abbot had come to an agreement with his knights, and as it were, rested in peace, lo! again, “The Philistines be upon thee, Samson!”¹¹⁴ For the Londoners, with one voice, threatened to level with the earth the stone houses, which the abbot had built in the same year, or to take distress a hundredfold from the men of St. Edmund, if the abbot not at once make reparation to them

¹¹⁴Jud. xvi., 9.

fectis villæ Sancti Ædmundi, qui xv. denarios acceperant a caretis civium Londoniensium, quæ, venientes de Gernemue, allecia portantes, transitum per nos fecerunt. Et dicebant cives Lundonienses fuisse quietos de theloneo in omni foro, et semper et ubique, per totam Angliam, a tempore quo Roma primo fundata fuit, et civitatem Lundoniæ, eodem tempore fundatam, talem debere habere libertatem per totam Angliam, et ratione civitatis privilegiatæ, quæ olim metropolis fuit et caput regni, et ratione antiquitatis.

for the wrong which they had suffered from the bailiffs of the town of St. Edmund's. For they had taken fifteen pence from the carts of the citizens of London, which were coming from Yarmouth and carrying herrings, and which passed through our town. And the citizens of London said that they had been quit of toll in every market, and always and in every place, throughout all England, from the time when the city of Rome was first founded, at which time the city of London was also founded. They said that they ought to have this privilege throughout all England, both on the ground that their city was a privileged city, which had been the metropolis and capital of the kingdom, and on the score of the antiquity of the city.

Abbas vero competentes indutias quæsiuit inde, usque ad reditum domini regis in Angliam, ut eum super hoc consuleret; et, habito consilio cum jurisdiscretis, replegiavit calumniatoribus illos xv. denarios, reservata utrique parti quæstione de jure suo.

The abbot, however, asked for a truce on this dispute for a reasonable time, until the return of the king to England, that he might consult with him on this matter; and taking the advice of men skilled in the law, he handed back to the complainants those fifteen pence as a pledge, without prejudice to the question of the right of either party.

*How there was a dispute
with the burghers as to the
dues from the town.
A.D. 1192.*

Decimo anno
abbatiæ S. ab-
batis, de com-
muni consilio

In the tenth year of the abbacy of abbot Samson, by common counsel of our chapter, we made complaint to the abbot in his court and said that the re-

capituli nostri, conquesti sumus abbat in curia sua, dicentes redditus et exitus omnium bonarum villarum et burgorum Angliæ crescere et augmentari, in commodum possidentium et emendationem dominorum, præter villam istam, quæ xl. libras dare solet, et nunquam ad plus extenditur; et burghenses villæ esse in causa hujusmodi rei, qui tantas et tot purpresturas tenent in foro, de sopis et seldis, et stalagiis, sine assensu conventus, et ex solo dono præfectorum villæ, qui annuales firmarii et quasi servientes sacristæ fuerunt, pro beneplacito ejus removendi.

Burgenses vero summoniti responderunt, se esse in assisa regis, nec de tenementis, quæ illi et patres eorum tenuerunt, bene et in pace, uno anno et uno die, sine calumnia, se velle respondere contra libertatem villæ et cartas suas; et dixerunt talem fuisse consuetudinem antiquam, ut præfecti darent, inconsulto conventu, loca soparum et seldarum in foro per aliquem redditum præfecturæ annuatim reddendum. Nos autem reclamantes volumus, ut abbas dissaisiaret eos de talibus tenementis, unde warantum nullum habuerunt.

ceipts from all the goods of the towns and boroughs of England were increased, and had grown to the advantage of the possessors and the greater profit of their lords, save in the case of this town, which had been wont to pay forty pounds and had never had its dues increased. And we said that the burghers of the city were responsible for this, since they held so many and such large stands in the market-place, shops and sheds and stalls, without the assent of the monastery, and at the sole gift of the bailiffs of the town, who were annual holders of their offices, and as it were servants of the sacristan, being removable at his good pleasure.

But when the burghers were summoned, they answered that they were under the jurisdiction of the king, and that they ought not to make reply, contrary to the liberty of the town and their charters, concerning that which they had held and their fathers well and in peace, for one year and a day without dispute. And they said that it was the old custom that the bailiffs should, without consulting the monastery, give to them places for shops and sheds in the market-place, in return for some annual payment to the bailiwick. But we disputed this, and wished the abbot to dispossess them of such things as they held without having any

warrant for them.

Abbas vero veniens ad consilium nostrum, tanquam unus ex nobis, secreto nobis dixit, se velle nobis rectum tenere pro posse suo; sed ordine iusticiario se debere procedere, nec sine iudicio curiæ posse dissaisiare liberos homines suos de terris vel redditibus suis, quos per plures annos tenuerunt, sive iuste, sive injuste: quod si faceret, dicebat se cadere in misericordiam regis per assisam regni.

Then the abbot came to our council, as if he had been one of ourselves, and privately informed us that he wished, so far as he could, to do right to us; but that he had to proceed in a judicial manner, and that he could not, without the judgment of the court, dispossess his free men of their lands and revenues, which they had, whether rightly or wrongly, held for many years. He added that if he were to do this, he would be liable to punishment at the discretion of the king and at the assizes of the kingdom.

Burgenses ergo, ineuntes consilium, optulerunt conventui redditum c. solidorum pro bono pacis, et ut tenerent tenementa sua, sicut solebant. Nos vero hoc nolimus concedere, malentes ponere loquelam in respectum, sperantes forsitan, tempore alterius abbatis, vel omnia recuperare, vel locum nundinarum mutare; et ita res cepit dilationem per plures annos.

The burghers, therefore, took counsel and offered the monastery a revenue of a hundred shillings for the sake of peace, and that they might hold that which they held as they had been accustomed. But we would not grant this, preferring to postpone the matter, and perchance hoping that in the time of another abbot, either we might recover all, or change the place of the fair; and so the matter for many years advanced no further.

*Concerning the charter
granted to the town by the
abbot.*

A.D. 1194.

Cum autem redisset abbas de Allemannia, optulerunt ei burgenses lx. marcas, et

But when the abbot had returned from Germany, the burghers offered him sixty marks, and sought his confirmation of the liberties of the town, under the same form of words as that in whi-

petierunt confirmationem suam de libertatibus villæ, sub eadem forma verborum, sicut prædecessores ejus Anselmus et Ordingus et Hugo eis confirmaverant; quod et abbas Samson benigne annuit eis. Nobis autem murmurantibus et grunnientibus, facta est eis carta, sicut eis promiserat: et quia pudor esset ei et confusio, si non posset implere quod promiserat, nolimus ei contradicere, nec ad iracundiam provocare. Burgenses autem, ex quo habuerunt cartam abbatis S. et conventus, confidebant plenius, quod nunquam tempore abbatis S. amitterent tenementa sua nec libertates suas; unde nunquam postea, sicut prius, voluerunt prænominatum redditum centum solidorum dare nec offerre.

Abbas autem, hoc tandem advertens, convenit burgenses super hoc, dicens quod, nisi facerent pacem cum conventu, prohiberet seldas eorum ædificari ad nundinas Sancti Ædmundi. Illi vero responderunt, se velle dare singulis annis cappam sericam, vel ali-quod aliud ornamentum ad pretium centum solidorum, sicut prius promiserunt; sed tamen hoc pacto, ut quieti essent imperpetuum de decimis denariorum, quos sacrista acriter ab eis

ch his predecessors Anselm and Ording and Hugh had confirmed them to them. And this also the abbot graciously conceded.¹¹⁵ But while we murmured and grumbled, a charter was made for them, as he had promised to them; and as it would have been a source of shame and confusion to him if he had been unable to do that which he had promised, we would not oppose him, or provoke him to anger. But the burghers, from the time when they had the charter of abbot Samson and of the monastery, were full of confidence that they would never lose their holdings and liberties in the time of abbot Samson; and, therefore, never afterwards would they, as they had done before, give or offer the said revenue of a hundred shillings.

The abbot, however, at length turned his attention to this, and assembling the burghers together about the matter, said that if they would not make their peace with the monastery, he would forbid their sheds to be put up at the fair of St. Edmund's. Then they answered that they would give every year a silken cope, or some other ornament to the value of a hundred shillings, as they had before promised. But they offered this on condition

¹¹⁵Samson's charter is to be found in the *Monasticon* (Rokewode, p. 137).

exigebat.

that they should be quit for ever from the tenths on their money which the sacristan sternly exacted from them.

Abbas autem et sacrista hoc contradi-
xerunt, et ideo posita est iterum loque-
la in respectum. Nos vero illos c. soli-
dos huc usque amisimus, secundum
quod vulgariter solet dici: “Qui non
vult capere quando potest, non capiet
quando volet.”

The abbot and the sacristan opposed
this offer, and so the dispute was again
left unsettled. But we have lost tho-
se hundred shillings from that day to
this, according as is said in the proverb,
“He that will not when he may, when
he will he shall have nay.”

*How the monastery was
troubled with incompetent
cellarers.*

Celerarii cele-
rarii plures
pluribus suc-
cedebant, et
quilibet eorum in fine anni magno
debito deprimebatur. Dabantur ce-
lerario in auxilium xx. libræ de Mil-
denhal, nec sufficiebant. Assignatæ
sunt postea quinquaginta libræ celera-
rio singulis annis de eodem manerio;
et adhuc dicebat celerarius hoc non
sufficere.

Cellarers succeeded each other in rap-
id succession, and each one of them
at the end of the year was oppressed
with great debt. The twenty pounds
from Mildenhall were given to assist
the cellarer, and proved insufficient.
Afterwards there were assigned to him
forty pounds a year from the same ma-
nerio, and still the cellarer said that this
was not enough.

Volens ergo abbas indemnitati et utili-
tati tarn suæ quam nostræ providere,
sciens in omni defectu nostro ad eum,
tanquam ad patrem monasterii, esse
recurrendum, quendam clericum de
mensa sua, magistrum Ranulfum no-
mine, celerario nostro associavit, ut ei
tanquam testis et socius assisteret, et
in expensis et in receiptis.

Accordingly the abbot, wishing to pro-
vide for his own safety and comfort
and for ours, as he knew that in the ca-
se of any deficiency we must appeal
to him, as the father of the monaste-
ry, associated with our cellarer one of
the clerks of his table, master Ranulf
by name, that he might assist him as
a witness and companion both in the
paying out and in the receiving of mo-

ney.

Et ecce! multi multa loquuntur. Densescunt murmurationes, fabricantur mendacia, consuuntur detractioes detractioibus, nec est angulus in domate, qui venenoso non resonet sibilo. Dicit aliquis alicui: "Quid est quod factum est? quis vidit talia? nunquam tale dedecus factum est conventui. Ecce! abbas constituit clericum super monachum; ecce! clericum constituit magistrum et custodem super celarium, ut nichil boni possit facere sine eo. Monachos suos vilipendit abbas, monachos suspectos habet, clericos consulit, clericos diligit. 'Quomodo obscuratum est aurum, mutatus est color optimus.'"

And behold! there was much diversity of opinion. Murmurs rose; lies were invented; slanders are joined to slanders, nor is there a spot in the house which is not resounding with poisonous hissing. One says to another, "What is this which has been done? Who has seen such things? Never was such a disgrace inflicted on a monastery. See! the abbot has made a clerk superior to a monk. See! he has made a clerk master and guardian over the cellarer, that he may be able to do no good without him. The abbot little regards his monks; he suspects them: he consults the clerks; he loves clerks. How is the gold become dim! how is the most fine gold changed!"¹¹⁶

Dixit item amicus amico: "Facti sumus in opprobrium vicinis nostris. Omnes nos monachi vel infideles, vel improvidi reputamur; clerico creditur, non monacho: magis confidit abbas de clerico quam de monacho. Numquid clericus ille magis fidelis est, vel magis sapiens, quam aliquis monachus?" Item dixit socius socio: "Celerarius et subcelerarius nonne sunt, vel esse possunt, tam fideles homines ut sacrista, vel ut camerarius? Consequens ergo est, ut iste abbas,

And friend said to friend, "We are become a reproach to our neighbours. All we monks are held to be either dishonest or extravagant; credit is given to a clerk, not to a monk; the abbot has more confidence in a clerk than in a monk. Why should this clerk be more faithful, or wiser, than some monk?" And one said to his companion, "Are not our cellarer and sub-cellarer, or cannot they be, as faithful men as the sacristan or as the chamberlain? The result is that this abbot or his suc-

¹¹⁶Lament. iv., 1.

vel successor ejus, clericum ponat cum sacrista, clericum cum camerario, clericum cum subsacristis, ad colligendam oblationem ad feretrum, et sic cum singulis officialibus, unde nos erimus in subsannationem et derisum omni populo.”

Ego autem talia audiens, solebam respondere: “Si ego essem celerarius, vellem utique, ut clericus mihi testis esset in omnibus agendis; quia si bene facerem, ipse testimonium perhiberet de bono; si vero in fine anni aliquo debito oppressus essem, credi possem et excusari per clericum illum.”

Unum autem ex fratribus nostris, virum utique discretum et litteratum, audivi quiddam dicentem, quod movit me et plures alios: “Non est,” inquit, “mirandum, si dominus abbas de nostris rebus custodiendis partes suas interponat, qui portionem abbatiæ, quæ eum contingit, sapienter regit et domui suæ sapienter disponit, cujus interest defectum nostrum supplere, si ex incuria vel inpotentia nostra contingat. Sed unum,” inquit, “restat periculum, post mortem S. abbatis futurum, quale nunquam nobis contigit diebus vitæ nostræ. Venient sine dubio bailivi regis et saisiabunt abbatiā in manu sua, scilicet baroniam quæ pertinet ad ab-

cessor will associate a clerk with the sacristan, and a clerk with the chamberlain, and a clerk with the subsacristans, to collect the offerings at the shrine, and so with all the officials, whereby we shall become a laughing-stock and a scorn to all people.”

But when I heard these things, I used to answer, “If I were cellarer, I should wish to have a clerk to be my witness in all that had to be done, and so if I did well, he would bear witness of the good, but if at the end of the year I were burdened with any debt, I should be able by means of the clerk to gain credence and be excused.”

I heard a certain one of our brothers, a man discreet and learned indeed, say a thing which moved me and many others. “It is not wonderful,” he declared, “if the lord abbot intervenes in matters connected with the safe conduct of our affairs. For he rules wisely the part of the abbey, which belongs to him, and he makes wise dispositions for his house; and it is his concern to supply that which is lacking to us, if a want arises owing to our carelessness or poverty. But,” he continued, “there is yet one possible danger which may arise after the death of abbot Samson, and such a danger has never been in all the days of our life. There is no doubt

batem, sicut olim factum est post mortem cæterorum abbatum; et sicut olim post mortem H. abbatis voluerunt ballivi regis constituere novos præfectos in villa Sancti Ædmundi, auctoritate[†] allegantes H. abbatem hoc fecisse, consimili ratione, processu temporis, ballivi regis ponent clericum suum ad custodiendum cellarium, ut per eum et ad præceptum ejus omnia fiant; et dicturi sunt se debere hoc facere, quia abbas Samson sic fecit; et ita poterunt commiseri et confundi res et redditus abbatis et conventus, quos abbas Robertus[‡] bonæ memoriæ requisito consilio distinxit, et ab invicem separavit." Cum hoc et consimilia verba audirem a viro magni consilii et provido, stupui et tacui, domnum abbatem de tali facto nec volens condemnare, nec volens excusare.

that the officers of the king will come and will take the abbey into his hand, that is, the barony which pertains to the abbot, as has been done hitherto, after the death of other abbots, and as was done before on the death of abbot Hugh, the officials of the king will desire to appoint new bailiffs in the town of St. Edmund, alleging as their authority that abbot Hugh did this. And for the same reason, in course of time, the officials of the king will appoint a clerk of theirs to watch over the cellar, that all things may be done through him and by his command, and they will say that this ought to be done, because abbot Samson did so. And in this way they will be able to mingle and to confound the affairs and revenues of the abbot and of the monastery, which abbot Robert,¹¹⁷ of happy memory, after taking counsel, separated and divided from each other." And when I heard these and other like words from a man of great wisdom and prudence, I was overwhelmed and was silent, wishing not to condemn and wishing not to excuse the lord abbot in so great a

[†]So J.; Mr. Gage Rokewode read "auctoritatem." The meaning is the same in either case, "alleging in warrant," (or, "as their warrant") "that abbot Hugo had done this."

¹¹⁷Robert II. (1107–12). The charter of Henry I. confirming this division is to be found in the *Monasticon* (ed. 1846, III., 152, No. xiv).

[‡]Abbot Robert II., who died in 1107, a few weeks after he had been blessed by St. Anselm; see App., B. Mr. Rokewode follows Battely here in his mistaken belief that Robert survived till 1112; see his note on the passage.

matter.

*How the abbot resisted
Hubert Walter when he
claimed legatine authority
over the abbey.
About A.D. 1198.*

Hubertus Walteri[†] archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, et legatus apostolicæ sedis et iusticiarius Angliæ, cum multas ecclesias visitasset, et multa mutasset et innovasset jure legatiæ, rediens de matre sua carnali[‡] morante et moriente apud Derham,* transmissit ad nos ij. clericos suos, portantes literas domini sui signatas, quibus continebatur, ut dictis et factis eorum fidem haberemus. Illi vero abbati et conventui proposuerunt interroganda, utrum vellemus recipere dominum suum legatum ad nos venientem, sicut debet recipi legatus, et recipitur ab aliis ecclesiis. Quod et si concederemus, in brevi veniret ad nos, una cum consilio abbatis et conventus de rebus

Hubert Walter, archbishop of Canterbury, and legate of the apostolic see and justiciar of England, after he had visited many churches, and had changed many things and introduced innovations by his legatine authority,¹¹⁸ on his return from his carnal mother, who was dying at Dereham¹¹⁹ where she dwelt, he sent to us two of his clerks, who bore sealed letters from their lord, in which it was announced that we should give credence to their sayings and acts. Then these clerks made enquiry of the abbot and monastery as to whether we would receive their lord, the legate, who was coming to us, in such a manner as a legate ought to be received, and as he had been received in other churches. And if we would grant this, then he would shortly come to us, to settle the business

[†] Hubert's father, Harvey Walter, was descended from Hubert, the first Norman settler, who received grants of land at the time of the Conquest in Norfolk and Suffolk. Theobald, the favourite brother of the archbishop, migrated to Ireland, assumed the name of Boteler, and became the ancestor of the great house of Ormond. (Hook's *Archbishops of Canterbury*.)

¹¹⁸ Hubert Walter received the legation from Celestine III. in 1195. An account of his proceedings on the visitation of York, and the decrees which he issued there, are to be found in Hoveden (III., 293–7). Hoveden (III., 299) also relates the deposition of the abbot of Thorney by Hubert Walter at this time.

[‡] This was Maude, daughter of Theobald de Valoines, a sister of Bertha, the wife of Ranulf de Glanville. (Hook.)

* At West Dereham in 1188, Hubert, being then Dean of York, founded a house of Præmonstratensian canons, for the benefit of his own and his parents' souls, and of those of Ranulf de Glanville and Bertha his wife, "qui nos nutreierun." Dugdale, vi. 899.

¹¹⁹ West Dereham, in Norfolk, was the birthplace of Hubert Walter.

et negotiis ecclesiæ nostræ secundum Deum dispositurus; quod et si ei hoc nollemus concedere, clerici illi duo mandatum domini sui nobis plenius exprimerent.

Abbate vero convocante plures de conventu, tale consilium inivimus, ut clericis ad nos missis benigne responderemus, dicentes, nos velle dominum suum recipere, ut legatum, cum omni honore et reverentia, et mittere simul cum eis nuntios nostros, qui hoc domino legato ex parte nostra dicerent; et consultum habuimus ut, sicut prius feceramus episcopo Eliensi et aliis legatis, ei omnem honorem exhiberemus cum profectione, et campanis resonantibus, et cum ceteris solempnibus, eum reciperemus, donec veniretur ad scrutinium in capitulo forsitan faciendum: quod si vellet facere, tunc demum ei omnes unanimiter resisteremus in facie, Romam appellantes et cartis nostris innitentes.

Dixitque dominus abbas: "Si ad præsens voluerit legatus ad nos venire, ita faciemus sicut supradictum est; si vero adventum suum ad nos distulerit ad tempus, interim dominum papam consulemus, quærentes, quam vim habe-

and affairs of our church according to God, with the advice of the abbot and monastery. But if we would not grant this, those two clerks would explain to us more in detail the message of their lord.

Then the abbot summoned the majority of the monastery and we took counsel that we should give a favourable answer to the clerks who had been sent to us, saying that we would receive their lord, as legate, with all honour and respect, and that we should send with them our messengers, who should say the same to the lord legate on our behalf. And our idea was that, as we had previously done in the case of the bishop of Ely and other legates, we should show him all honour with a profection and the ringing of bells, and receive him with the other due ceremonies, until perchance he should come to hold a visitation in the chapter. And if he wished to do this, then at last we should all resist him in common to the face, appealing to Rome and trusting to our charters.

The lord abbot said also, "If the legate now wishes to come to us, let us act in this manner as has been said. But if he delay his coming to us for a while, let us again seek counsel of the lord pope, and ask what force the privileges of

re debeant privilegia ecclesiæ nostræ, ab eo et antecessoribus suis impetrata, contra archiepiscopum, qui super omnes privilegiatas ecclesias Angliæ a sede apostolica potestatem impetravit." Tale fuit consilium nostrum.

Cum autem audisset archiepiscopus, quod vellemus recipere eum ut legatum, nuntios nostros grante receptit, et cum gratiarum actione. Et factus est domino abbati in omnibus negotiis suis benignus et propitius, et adventum suum ad nos quibusdam causis emergentibus distulit ad tempus. Omni ergo dilatione postposita, misit abbas domino papæ easdem literas, quas legatus miserat ei et conventui, in quibus continebatur quod ipse venturus esset ad nos auctoritate legationis suæ, et auctoritate domini papæ, in quibus scribebatur, quod et ei data fuit potestas super omnes exemptas ecclesias Angliæ, non obstantibus literis Eboracensi ecclesiæ vel alicui impetratis.

Instante autem nuntio abbatis, scripsit

our church, which we have obtained from him and his predecessors, ought to have as against the archbishop, who has obtained power from the apostolic see over all the other privileged churches of England." Such then was our counsel.

And when the archbishop heard that we would receive him as legate, he received our messengers graciously, and with giving of thanks. And he became kind and friendly to the lord abbot in all his affairs, and delayed his coming among us for a while on account of some urgent business. Therefore, without any delay the abbot sent to the lord pope the same letters which the legate had sent to the monastery, which announced that he would come to us by the authority of his legation and by the authority of the lord pope, and in which it was written that power had been given him over all the exempt churches of England, notwithstanding letters granted to the church of York and others.

So at the instance of the messenger of the abbot, the lord pope wrote¹²⁰ to the lord of Canterbury and declared that our church, his spiritual daughter, was accountable to no legate, unless it might be to a legate *a latere*, sent by the lord pope, and forbade him to

dominus papa domino Cantuariensi,[†] asserens ecclesiam nostram spiritua-lem filiam suam nulli legato respon-dere, nisi legato a latere domini papæ misso, et prohibuit, ne in nos manum extenderet; et adjecit dominus papa de suo, prohibens etiam, ne in aliquam aliam ecclesiam exemptam potesta-tem exerceret. Rediit ad nos nuntius noster, et absconditum fuit hoc aliquot diebus. Significatum tamen hoc fuit domino Cantuariensi a familiaribus suis de curia domini papæ.

stretch forth his hand over us. And the lord pope added, on his own account, that he further forbade him to exercise power over any other exempt church. Our messenger returned to us and the matter was hidden for some days. But it was made known to the lord of Can-terbury by his friends in the court of the lord pope.

Cum autem in fine anni visitationem suam faceret legatus per Norfolch et Suthfolch, et venisset primo apud Co-lecestriam, misit legatus ad abbatem nuntium occulte, mandans ei, quod bene audivit dici, quod abbas impetrave-rat literas contra legatiam suam, et pe-tens, ut mitteret ei amicabilem literas illas. Et ita factum est. Habuit enim abbas duo paria literarum sub eadem forma. Abbas vero nec visitavit lega-

Now when at the end of the year the legate made his visitation in Norfolk and Suffolk, and had come first to Col-chester, he sent a secret messenger to the abbot, and informed him that he had heard it said many times that the abbot had obtained letters against his legation, and asked that he would send those letters to him in a friendly way. And so it was done, for the abbot had two copies of the letters in identical

¹²⁰Innocent III., who became pope in 1198, confirmed the privileges of St. Edmund, especially those granted by Alexander and Urban (Rokewode, p. 137). Arnold (*Mem.*, I., 285, note) suggests that as no such letter as that described in the text can be found, Jocelin misunderstood the statement of Samson, and that he really refers to the letter addressed by Innocent to the abbot and convent of St. Edmund.

[†]No such letter is to be found in the Regesta of of Innocent III.'s correspondence in 1198 and 1199, printed in Migne's *Patrologie* (vol. ccxiv.). It seems probable that Jocelin misunderstood what he heard from Samson, and that the letter referred to was that of the 1st Dec. 1198 (Nº 457 of the Regesta), which the pope addressed, not to the archbishop, but to the abbot and convent of St. Edmund. This letter opens thus, "Cum ecclesia vestra ecclesiæ Romanæ sit filia specialis [note the resemblance of phrase], et ad eam nullo pertineat mediante, vos . . . ad apostolicam sedem tanquam ad caput vestrum in arduis ducitis recurrendum."

tum, nec per se, nec per interpositam personam, quamdiu fuit in episcopatu Norwicensi, ne putaretur velle facere finem cum legato de hospitio ei faciendo, sicut ceteri monachi et canonici fecerunt. Legatus autem turbatus et iratus, et timens excludi, si ad nos veniret, per Norwicum, per Acram, per Derham, transivit in Heli, Lundoniam tendens.

Abbate autem apparente, infra mensem, coram legato, inter Waltham et Lundoniam, in via regia, convenit eum quod noluit ei occurrere utpote justituario domini regis quando fuit in regione ista. Abbas autem respondit, eum non isse ut justitarium, sed ut legatum, facientem scrutinium in singulis ecclesiis, et allegavit rationem temporis, et quod passio Domini instabat, et oportebat eum interesse divinis obsequiis et claustralibus observantiis. Cum autem verba verbis, objectiones objectionibus opposuisset abbas, nec posset minis terri nec flecti, respondit legatus cum indignatione se bene scire quod disputator bonus esset, et illum esse meliorem clericum, quam legatus esset.

terms. But the abbot visited the legate neither in person nor through any intermediary, as long as he was in the bishopric of Norwich, lest he might be thought to desire to come to terms with the legate as to the matter of providing entertainment for him, as the other monks and canonical persons had done. The legate, for his part, was disturbed and angry, and fearing that he would be shut out if he should come to us, passed through Norwich, Acre, and Dereham to Ely, making his way towards London.

Then within a month, the abbot appeared before the legate between Waltham and London, in the king's highway, and the legate blamed him because he would not come to him as justiciar of the lord king, when he was in that district. But the abbot answered that he had been there not as justiciar, but as legate, making scrutiny in all churches, and brought forward as his excuse the season of the year, and that the Passion of the Lord drew near, at which time it was necessary for him to be engaged in divine services and in the observances of the cloister. And when the abbot met words with words and objections with objections, and could not be terrified or bent, the legate answered with anger that he well knew that he was skilled in argument,

and that he was a better clerk than the legate was.

Abbas ergo, nec tacenda timide præteriens, nec dicenda tumide loquens, in audientia plurium respondit se talem esse, quod nunquam sustinebit ecclesiæ suæ libertatem quassari, nec propter defectum scientiæ nec pecuniæ, etiamsi oporteret eum mori vel perpetuo exilio damnari. Finitis autem his et hujusmodi altercationibus, incepit legatus erubescere, abbate parcius loquente, et rogante, ut mitius ageret cum ecclesia Sancti Ædmundi, ratione natalis soli, quia quasi nativus Sancti Ædmundi et ejus nutritus[†] fuit. Erubuit quidem, quia virus, quod intus conceperat, inconsulte effuderat.

Therefore the abbot, without passing over in a cowardly manner things which ought not to be mentioned, or speaking arrogantly of those things which had to be said, in the audience of many men, answered that he was the type of man who would never allow the liberty of his church to be infringed, either owing to lack of knowledge or to lack of money, even if it were necessary for him to die or be condemned to perpetual banishment. And when an end was made of these and other like altercations, the legate began to blush when the abbot spoke softly and prayed that he would deal more mildly with the church of St. Edmund, for the sake of his native land, for he was as it were a son of St. Edmund and there brought up. He blushed, indeed, because he had thoughtlessly poured forth the poison which he had conceived within him.

A.D. 1199.

In crastino nuntiatum est archiepiscopo Cantuariensi, quod dominus Eboracensis veniret legatus in Angliam, et quod ipse suggesserat multa mala domino papæ de eo, dicens quod ipse gravaverat ecclesias

On the morrow, word was brought to the archbishop of Canterbury that the lord of York was coming to England as legate,¹²¹ and that he had hinted many evil things to the lord pope concerning him, saying that he had oppressed the churches of England by taking on ac-

[†] Nutritius? Roke.

Angliæ causa visitationis suæ de triginta millibus marcis argenti acceptis. Misit ergo legatus ad abbatem clericos suos, rogans, ut scriberet cum ceteris abbatibus domino papæ, et excusaret eum. Quod concessit abbas, et testimonium perhibuit quod dominus Cantuariensis nec ad nostram ecclesiam venit, nec illam nec aliam gravavit ecclesiam, loquens secundum conscientiam suam. Et cum abbas tradidisset literas illas nunciis archiepiscopi, dixit coram omnibus, se non timere etiamsi voluerit archiepiscopus in his literis malignari; et responderunt clerici in periculo animæ suæ dominum suum nichil doli velle machinari, sed tantum velle excusari, et ita facti sunt amici archiepiscopus[†] et abbas.

*How the abbot contended
with his knights as to
service across the sea.
A.D. 1198.*

bus Angliæ, ut de suis baroniis novem milites facerent decimum, et sine dilatione venirent ad eum in Normanniam, cum equis et armis, in auxilium

count of his visitation thirty thousand marks of silver. For that reason the legate sent his clerks to the abbot, asking that he would write with the other abbots to the lord pope and defend him. And then the abbot granted this, and gave witness that the lord of Canterbury had neither come to our church, nor oppressed that or any other church, speaking according to his knowledge. And when the abbot had handed over those letters to the messengers of the archbishop, he said before all men that he had no fear even if the archbishop wished to make an improper use of these letters. And the clerks answered on the peril of their master's soul, that their lord wished not to deal craftily, but only desired to excuse himself. And so the archbishop and the abbot were made friends.

Præcepit rex
Ricardus omnibus
episcopis et abbatibus

King Richard sent orders to all the bishops and abbots of England that every nine knights should furnish a tenth,¹²² and that these should come to him in Normandy without delay, with horses and arms, to help him against the king of France. It therefore was necessary for the abbot to

¹²¹ After having tried in vain to obtain a decision in his favour from Celestine III., Geoffrey secured such a decision from Innocent (Hoveden, IV., 67). The report that he was to receive legatine authority was, however, unfounded.

[†] The sincere and faithful character of archbishop Hubert comes out in all this narrative, which is so far in full agreement with Gervase's laudatory biography in the *Actus Pontificum*.

contra regem Franciæ. Unde et abbatem oportuit respondere de iiij. militibus mittendis. Cumque summoneri fecisset omnes milites suos, et eos inde convenisset, responderunt, feudos suos, quod de Sancto Ædmondo tenuerunt, hoc non debere, nec se, nec patres eorum, unquam Angliam exisse, sed scutagium aliquando ad præsceptum regis dedisse.

Abbas vero in arcto positus hinc videns libertatem suorum militum periclitari, illinc timens ne amitteret saisinam baroniæ suæ pro defectu servitii regis, sicut contigerat episcopo Londoniensi et multis baronibus Angliæ, statim transfretavit; et fatigatus multis laboribus et expensis et exeniis quamplurimis quæ regi dedit, in primis nulum potuit facere finem cum rege per denarios. Dicenti ergo, se non indigere auro nec argento, sed iiij^{or} milites instanter exigenti, quatuor milites stipendiarios optulit abbas. Quos cum rex recepisset, apud castellum de Houmisit. Abbas autem in instanti eis xxvi. marcas dedit ad expensas xl. dierum.

be responsible for the sending of four knights. And when he had caused all his knights to be summoned, and had gathered them together on this matter, they answered that their fees, which they held of St. Edmund, were not liable to this, and that neither they, nor their fathers, had ever gone out of England, though they had sometimes paid scutage by command of the king.

Then the abbot was in a difficult position, as on the one hand he saw that the liberty of his knights was endangered, and on the other feared lest he might lose seisin of his barony for default of service to the king, as had happened to the bishop of London and to many barons of England. And he at once crossed the sea, and having wearied himself with many labours and expenses and with the many presents which he gave to the king, at first he was unable to come to terms with the king by means of a money payment. And so, when the king said that he needed neither gold nor silver, but instantly demanded the four knights, the abbot offered him four mercenary knights.

¹²² Hoveden (IV., 40) appears to relate the same demand as is here mentioned by Jocelin. "In this year [1198] Richard asked, through Hubert Walter, that the men of the kingdom of England should find him three hundred knights or give him so much money as would enable him to hire three hundred knights to serve for one year, at the rate of three Angevin shillings for each knight per diem." All the rest assented to the demand, but Hugh Avalon, bishop of Lincoln, refused to do so.

¹²³ This castle was restored to Richard by the treaty of Issoudun (1196). The terms of the truce are to be found in Hoveden (IV., 3).

And the king received these and sent them to the castle of Eu.¹²³ And the abbot gave them thirty-six marks at once for their expenses for forty days.

In crastino autem venerunt quidam familiares regis, consulentes abbati, ut sibi caute provideret, dicentes werram posse durare per annum integrum, vel amplius, et expensas militum excescere et multiplicari in perpetuum damnum ei et ecclesiæ suæ. Et ideo consulebant, ut antequam recederet de curia finem faceret cum rege, unde posset quietus esse de militibus prædictis post xl. dies. Abbas autem, sano usus consilio, centum libras regi dedit pro tali quietantia, et ita cum gratia domini rediit in Angliam, breve regis portans secum, ut milites sui distringerentur per feudos suos ad reddendum ei servitium regis, quod ipse fecerat pro eis.

But on the morrow there came certain friends of the king, and counselled the abbot that he should proceed cautiously, saying that the war might last for a full year or more, and the cost of the knights increase and multiply to the perpetual loss of him and his church. They therefore advised that before he left the court, he should come to terms with the king, so that he might be quit of the said knights after forty days. Then the abbot, taking good advice, gave a hundred pounds to the king for this quittance, and so returned to England in high favour with his lord. And he bore with him the king's writ that distraint should be levied on the fees of his knights to repay him for the service which he had made to the king on their behalf.

Milites vero summoniti allegabant paupertatem suam, et multa genera gravaminum, et obtulerunt domino suo duas marcas de quolibet scuto. Abbas autem, non immemor, quod ipse eos gravaverat eodem anno, et inplacitaverat de scutagio integre reddendo, volens eos conciliare in gratiam, gratanter accepit quod illi gratanter

When the knights were summoned, they alleged their poverty and many different grievances, and offered their lord two marks from each fee. And the abbot, not unmindful of the fact that he had himself burdened them in that same year, and had brought a suit against them to force them to pay a full scutage, wished to win back their

optulerunt.

Tunc temporis, licet multas expensas fecisset abbas ultra mare, non rediit vacua manu ad ecclesiam suam; ferens crucem auream et textum pretiosum ad pretium quaterviginti marcarum. Alia quoque vice cum redisset de ultra mare, sedens in capitulo dixit, quod si esset celerarius vel camerarius, aliquem questum faceret, qui suæ administrationi competeret; et cum esset abbas, aliquid acquirere deberet quod abbatem deceret. Hoc cum dixit, obtulit conventui casulam pretiosam et mitram auro intextam, et sandalia cum caligis sericis, et cambucam virgæ pastoralis argenteam et bene operatam. Simili modo, quotiens de ultra mare rediit aliquod ornamentum secum portavit.

*How the abbot took charge
of the cellar, and how for
that cause murmuring
arose in the monastery.
A.D. 1197.*

vationes et immutationes in ecclesia nostra, quæ sub silentio præteriri non debent. Cum non sufficerent celera-

favour, and graciously accepted that which they willingly offered to him.

At that time, though the abbot incurred great expenses over sea, he did not return empty-handed to his church, but brought with him a golden cross and a precious copy of the scriptures, which was worth twenty-four marks. And on another occasion, when he had returned from across the sea, sitting in his chapter he said that had he been cellarer or chamberlain he would have sought for something which would be helpful in the administration of his office. And he added that as he was abbot he ought to acquire something which was fitting for an abbot, and saying this he offered the monastery a costly chasuble and a mitre inlaid with gold, and sandals with silken buskins, and the head of a pastoral staff, made of silver and well worked. In the same way, as often as he returned from beyond the sea, he brought some ornament with him.

Anno gratiæ
m^o c. nona-
gesimo septi-
mo factæ sunt
quædam inno-

In the year of grace one thousand one hundred and ninety-seven, certain changes and alterations were made in our church, which may not be passed over in silence. When our cellarer did not find his ancient revenues sufficient, abbot Samson ordered that fifty pounds should be given him in

rio nostro antiqui redditus sui, jussit abbas S. ut quinquaginta libræ de Mildenhala darentur de incremento annuatim celerario per manum prioris; non simul, sed particulatim per menses, ut singulis mensibus aliquid haberetur ad expendendum, et non totum simul effunderetur in una parte anni: et ita factum est uno anno.

Celerarius autem cum complicitibus suis inde conquestus est, dicens, quod si illam pecuniam haberet præ manibus, sibi provideret et se instauraret. Abbas vero petitioni suæ cessit, licet invitus. Intrante mense Augusti, jam expenderat celerarius totum, et insuper xx. sex libras debebat, et quinquaginta debiturus erat ante festum Sancti Michaelis.

Audiens hoc abbas moleste tulit, et ita locutus est in capitulo: "Sæpius comminatus sum, quod ego capiam celerariam nostram in manu mea propter defectum et improvidentiam vestram, qui singulis debito magno vos obligatis. Clericum meum cum celerario vestro posui in testimonium, ut res consultius ageretur; sed non est clericus vel monachus qui audeat mihi dicere causam debiti. Dicitur tamen, quod inmoderata convivia in hospitio prio-

annual increase from Mildenhall by the hand of the prior. This was not to be paid at one time, but in instalments every month, that in each month there might be something to spend, and that the whole might not be used up in one part of the year; and so it was done for one year.

But the cellarer and his assistants complained of this, and he said that if he had had that money in his hands, he would have provided for himself and gathered stock for himself. Then the abbot, against his will indeed, granted that request. And when the beginning of August came, the cellarer had already spent the whole amount, and moreover owed twenty-six pounds, and was bound to pay a debt of fifty pounds before Michaelmas.

And when the abbot heard this, he was wroth, and spoke thus in the chapter, "I have often threatened that I would take our cellar into my own hands owing to your incompetence and extravagance, since you bind yourselves with great debt. I placed my clerk with your cellarer as a witness, that the office might be managed with greater care. But there is no clerk or monk who dares tell me the cause of the debt. It is said, indeed, that the too elabo-

ris, per assensum prioris et celerarii, et superfluæ expensæ in domo hospitum per incuriam hospitarii, sint inde causa. Videtis," inquit, "magnum debitum quod instat; dicite mihi consilium, quomodo res emendari debeat."

Multi claustrales hoc audientes, et quasi subridentes, gratum habebant quod dicebatur; dicentes, occulte, quia hoc verum est quod abbas dixerat. Retorquebat prior culpam in celerarium; celerarius vero in hospitarium; quilibet seipsum excusabat. Veritatem quidem sciebamur; sed tacebamus, quia timebamus. In crastino venit abbas, iterum dicens conventui: "Dicite mihi consilium vestrum, quomodo celeraria vestra consultius et melius regi possit?" Nec erat qui aliquid respondebat præter unum qui dixit, nullam omnino superfluitatem esse in refectorio, unde debitum vel gravamen deberet oriri. Tercio die dixit abbas eadem verba; et respondit unus: "Consilium istud a vobis debet emanare, tanquam a capite nostro."

Et dixit abbas: "Cum nec consilium

rate feasts in the prior's house, which occur with the assent of the prior and of the cellarer, and the superfluous expense in the guest-house owing to the carelessness of the guest master, are the cause of it. You see," he went on, "the great debt which is pressing on us; tell me your opinion as to the way in which the matter should be remedied."

Many of the cloistered monks, hearing this, and, as it were, laughing to themselves, were pleased with what was said, and said privately that what the abbot said was true. The prior cast the blame on the cellarer, and the cellarer on the guest-master, and the guest-master made excuse for himself. We, of course, knew the true reason, but were silent from fear. On the morrow the abbot came and again said to the monastery, "Give me your advice as to how your cellar may be more thoughtfully and better managed." And there was no one who would answer a word, save one who said that there was no waste at all in the refectory whence any debt or burden could arise. And on the third day the abbot said the same words, and one answered, "The advice ought to come from you, as from our head."

Then the abbot said, "Since you will

vultis dicere, nec domum vestram scitis per vos regere, mihi incumbit tanquam patri et summo custodi dispositio monasterii. Accipio,” inquit, “in manu mea celerariam vestram et expensam hospitum, et procuracionem interius et exterius.” Hiis dictis, deposuit celerarium et hospitiarium, et alios duos monachos substituit habentes nomina subcelerarii et hospitarii, clericum suum de mensa sua, magistrum G. eis associans, sine cuius assensu nichil in cibo vel potu, nec in expensis, nec in receptis ageretur. Antiqui emptores removebantur ab emptione in foro, et per clericum abbatis cibaria emebantur; et de bursa abbatis defectus nostri supplebantur. Hospites suscipiendi suscipiebantur et honorandi honorabantur; officiales et claustrales omnes pariter in refectorio reficiebantur, et undique superfluae expensae resecabantur.

Dixerunt autem quidam claustrales intra se: “Septem, utique septem, fuerunt qui bona nostra comederunt, de quorum comestionibus, si quis loquebatur, quasi reus laesae maiestatis habebatur.” Dicebat alius, tendens ad si-

not give advice, and cannot rule your house for yourselves, the control of the monastery falls upon me as your father and chief guardian. I receive,” he went on, “into my own hand your cellar and the charge of the guests, and the task of getting supplies within and without.” And with these words, he deposed the cellarer and guest-master, and replaced them with two monks, with the titles of sub-cellarer and guest-master, and associated with them a clerk of his table, master G., without whose assent nothing was to be done in the matter of food and drink, or in expenditure or in receipts. The former buyers were removed from the work of buying in the market, and food was to be purchased by a clerk of the abbot, and our deficits were to be made good from the abbot’s treasury. Guests who ought to be received were received, and those who ought to be honoured were honoured. Officials and cloistered monks alike took their meals in the refectory, and on all sides superfluous expenses were cut down.

But some of the cloistered monks said among them selves, “There were seven, yes, seven, who devoured our goods, and if one had spoken of their devouring, he would have been regarded as one guilty of high treason.” Another said, as he stretched forth

dera palmas:[†] “Benedictus Deus qui dedit talem voluntatem abbati, ut talia corrigat.” Et dicebant plerique, quia bene est.

Alii dicebant non, talem emendationem honoris depressionem æstimantes, et discretionem abbatis feritatem lupi appellantes; revocabant nempe ad memoriam antiqua somnia, scilicet quod futurus abbas sæviret ut lupus.

Mirabantur milites, mirabatur populus super his quæ fiebant, et dicebat aliquis in plebe: “Mirum est quod monachi, tot et literati viri, sustinent res et redditus confundi et commisci cum rebus abbatis; quæ semper solebant distingui et ab invicem separari. Mirum est quod sibi non cavent de periculo futuro post mortem abbatis, si dominus rex invenerit eos in tali statu.”

Dixit quidam alius, abbatem solum sapientem esse in rebus exterioribus regendis, et eum debere regere totum, qui scit regere totum. Et erat qui di-

his hands to heaven, “Blessed be God, Who hath given such a desire to the abbot, that he should correct so great faults.” And many said that it was well done.

Others said that it was not well done, thinking so great a reformation derogatory to the honour of the house, and calling the discretion of the abbot the ravening of a wolf; and in truth they called to mind old dreams, to the effect that he who should become abbot would raven as a wolf.

The knights were astonished, the people marvelled, at these things which had been done, and one of the common sort said, “It is a strange thing that the monks, being so many and learned men, should allow their affairs and revenues to be confused and mingled with the affairs of the abbot, when they had always been wont to be separated and parted asunder. It is strange that they do not guard themselves against the danger which will come after the death of the abbot, if the lord king should find things in this state.”

A certain man again said that the abbot was the only one who was skilled in external affairs, and that he ought to rule all, who knew how to rule all. And

[†] Æn. i. 93.

cebat: “Si saltem unus sapiens monachus esset in tanto conventu, qui domum sciret regere, abbas talia non fecisset.” Et ita facti sumus subsannatio et illusio his qui in circuitu nostro sunt.

one there was who said, “If there were but one wise monk in so great a monastery, who might know how to rule the house, the abbot would not have done such things.” And so we became a scorn and derision to those who were round about us.¹²⁴

In tali tempestate contigit diem anniversarium Roberti abbatis[†] recitari in capitulo, et decretum fuit, ut Placebo et Dirige cantarentur sollempnius solito, scilicet cum magnis campanis pulsatis, sicut in anniversariis Ordingi et H. abbatis, propter nobile factum prædicti R. abbatis, qui distinxit res et redditus nostros a rebus et redditibus abbatis. Fiebat autem ista sollempnitas quorundam consilio, ut saltem sic moveretur cor domini abbatis, scilicet ad bene faciendum. Erat autem aliquis qui putabat hoc fieri in confusionem abbatis, qui dicebatur velle confundere et commiscere res et redditus nostros et suos, eo quod saisiverat celerariam nostram in manu sua.

About this time it happened that the anniversary of abbot Robert¹²⁵ was to be celebrated in the chapter, and it was decreed that a Placebo and a Dirige should be sung more solemnly than was wont, that is, with ringing of the great bells, as on the anniversaries of abbots Ordning and Hugh. The cause of this was the noble deed of the said abbot Robert, who separated our goods and revenues from those of the abbot. But this solemnity was due to the counsel of some that so the heart of the lord abbot might be moved to do well. One there was, however, who thought that this was to be done to the shame of the abbot, who was accused of wishing to confound and intermingle his affairs and revenues and ours, in that he had taken our cellar into his own hand.

¹²⁴Ps. xlv., 13.

[†] Abbot Robert died on the 16th September (see App. B.); but his anniversary seems to have been deferred to the 28th.

¹²⁵Robert II. died on 16th September, 1112 (*Chron. Bur. Mem.*, III., 5). His festival, however, was kept on September 28th (*Arnold, Mem.*, I., 291, note). Rokewode (p. 139), quoting the *Liber Albus*, gives September 16th as his day, and for those of Ordning and Hugh, January 30th and November 14th respectively.

Abbas vero audiens insolitum sonitum campanarum, et bene sciens et advertens hoc contra consuetudinem fieri, causam facti sapienter dissimulavit et missam sollemniter cantavit. Die vero sequente Sancti Michaelis, volens in parte compescere murmurationes quorundam, illum qui prius fuit subcelerarius constituit celerarium, et quendam alium jussit nominari subcelerarium, remanente tamen prædicto clerico cum eis, et procurante omnia sicut prius. Cum autem clericus ille metas temperantiæ excederet, dicens, "Ego sum Bu.," id est, celerarius, cum metas temperantiæ in bibendo excessisset, et, inconsulto abbate, curiam celerarii teneret et vadia et plegios caperet, et redditus annuos reciperet et per manum suam expenderet, summus celerarius publice dicebatur a populo.

Cumque sæpius per curiam vagaretur et eum tanquam magistrum et summum procuratorem multi sequerentur pauperes et divites debitores, et calumniatores, diversi diversæ conditionis et pro diversis negotiis, stetit forte aliquis ex obedientiariis nostris in curia, et hæc videns, præ confusione et pudore lacrimatus est, cogitans hoc esse dedecus ecclesiæ nostræ, cogitans con-

Then when the abbot heard the unusual ringing of bells, and knew well and considered that this was contrary to custom, he wisely hid the cause of the action and sang mass solemnly. But on the following Michaelmas, since he wished to silence the murmurs of some men in part, he appointed him who had been sub-cellarer to the post of cellarer, and ordered another to be nominated as sub-cellarer, though the same clerk remained with them and procured all needful things as before. But when that clerk passed the bounds of moderation, saying, "I am Bu.,"—whereby he meant that the cellarer had passed the bounds of temperance in drinking,—and when, without consulting the abbot, he held the court of the cellarer and took sureties and pledges, and received the revenues for the year and spent them with his own hand, he was publicly called chief cellarer by the people.

And when the clerk often wandered through the court, and many poor and rich debtors followed him as if he had been master and chief agent, as well as claimants of divers sorts and on divers matters, perchance one of our officials stood in the court. He saw this, and wept for shame and confusion, thinking that this was a shame to our church, and thinking of the danger which

sequens periculum, cogitans clericum monacho preferri in præiudicium totius conventus. Procuravit ergo, quisquis fuit ille, per mediam personam, ut hæc domino abbati congrue et rationabiliter insinuarentur, factumque est ei intelligere quod huiusmodi arrogantia in clerico, quæ fiebat in dedecus et turpitudinem universitatis, posset esse causa magnæ turbationis et discordiæ in conventu. Abbas vero, cum hæc audisset, statim fecit mandari celerarium et prædictum clericum, iussitque ut celerarius de cetero se haberet ut celerarium in recipiendo denarios, in tenendo placita, et in omnibus aliis rebus, salvo tamen hoc, ut prædictus clericus ei assisteret, non a pari, sed ut testis et consiliarius.

*Concerning the will of
Hamo Blund.*

Hamo Blundus, unus ex ditioribus hominibus istius villæ, agens in extremis, vix aliquid testamentum voluit facere; tandem fecit testamentum ad pretium trium marcarum, nullo audiente nisi fratre suo et uxore sua et capellano. Quod cum abbas recognovisset post mortem ejus, illos tres convenit, et acriter corripuit super hoc, quod frater ejus, qui hæres erat, et uxor ejus non

would result, and thinking that a clerk was preferred to a monk to the prejudice of the whole monastery. Accordingly he, whoever he was, procured by means of another, that this should be fitly and moderately pointed out to the lord abbot, and it came to pass that it was brought to the abbot's knowledge how arrogant the clerk was, and what he did to the shame and wrong of all; and that he was the cause of great disturbance and discord in the monastery. But when the abbot heard this, he at once ordered word to be sent to the cellarer and to the said clerk, and commanded that the cellarer should henceforth regard himself as cellarer in the receipt of money, and in holding pleas, and in all other matters, saving this only, that the said clerk should assist him, not on an equality, but as a witness and adviser.

Hamo Blund, one of the richest men of that town, being on his death-bed, was scarce willing to make any will. At length, however, he left three marks by will, no one hearing his wishes except his brother and his wife and a chaplain. And when the abbot held an inquest after his death, he summoned those three and sternly rebuked them because the brother, who was the heir, and the wife, would not permit any other to come to the sick man, desiring to gain all

sustinuerunt aliquem alium accedere ad infirmum, cupientes omnia capere: things.

dixitque abbas in audientia: "Ego fui episcopus ejus, et curam habui animæ ejus; ne mihi vertatur in periculum sacerdotis et confessoris ejus inscitia, quia infirmo viventi consulere non potui absens, quod mea interest faciam saltem tarde. Præcipio ut omnia debita ejus et katalla mobilia, quæ valent cc. marcas, sicut dicitur, reducantur in scriptum, et una portio detur hæredi, et alia uxori, et tertia pauperibus consanguineis suis et aliis pauperibus. Equum autem, qui ductus est ante feretrum defuncti et oblatus est Sancto Ædmondo, jubeo remitti et reddi: non decet enim ecclesiam nostram coinquinari munere ejus, qui decessit intestatus, et quem fama accusat quod ex consuetudine solebat pecuniam suam ad usuram dare. Per os Dei, si alicui de cætero tale quid contigerit diebus meis, non sepelietur in cimiterio." Hiis dictis, recesserunt cæteri confusi.

And the abbot said in full audience, "I was his bishop, and I had the care of his soul; that the ignorance of his priest and confessor may not be harmful, and because I was absent and could not advise the sick man while he yet lived, it is my concern that I should do so even when it is late. I command that all his money and moveable property, which is reported to be worth two hundred marks, shall be written down, and that one portion shall be given to the heir, and a second to his wife, and a third to his poor relations and to other poor men. But the horse, which was led before the coffin of the dead man, and which was offered to St. Edmund, I order to be sent back and returned. For it is not right that our church should be disgraced by the present of him who died intestate, and who is accused by report of having been wont often to lend his money upon usury. By the face of God, if what has now happened occur again in the case of any man in my time, he shall not be buried in the cemetery." And when he had so spoken, the others went away in confusion.

How there were riots in the cemetery, and concerning that which was done in the matter.

In crastino Natalis Domini fiebant in cimiterio conventicula, colluctationes, et concertationes inter servientes abbatis et burgenses de villa; perventumque fuit a verbis ad verbera, a colaphis ad vulnera, et ad effusionem sanguinis. Abbas vero, hæc audiens, convocatis clanculo quibusdam, qui ad spectaculum convenerant, sed a longe steterant, nomina malefactorum jussit in scriptum redigi, quos omnes summoneri fecit, ut starent coram eo in crastino Sancti Thomæ archiepiscopi in capella Sancti Dionisii responsuri; nec interim aliquem de burgensibus vocavit ad mensam suam, sicut prius solebat facere, primis quinque diebus in Natali.

Die ergo statuto, acceptis juramentis a sexdecim legalibus hominibus, et auditis eorum attestationibus, dixit abbas: "Constat quod isti malefactores inciderunt in canonem[†] data[‡] sententiæ; sed quia laici sunt hinc et inde, et

On the morrow of the Nativity of the Lord, meetings and sports¹²⁶ and bandying of words were held in the cemetery between the servants of the abbot and the burghers of the town; and from words it came to blows, from blows to wounds, and to bloodshed. But when the abbot knew of this, he privately called together some of those who had come to the spectacle, but who had taken no part in it, and commanded the names of all the offenders to be written down. And he caused all of them to be summoned to appear to make answer before him in the chapel of St. Denis on the morrow of the feast of St. Thomas the archbishop. And in the meantime he would not invite any of the burghers to his table, as he had been wont to do in the first five days of Christmastide.

So on the appointed day, when oath had been taken from sixteen legal men, and their evidence had been heard, the abbot said, "It is well known that those wrong-doers have broken the canon *Latae sententiæ*. But as there are lay-

¹²⁶ Rokewode (p. 139) says that these shows were probably miracle-plays, and notes from the text that Samson did occasionally entertain minstrels (cp. text, p. 67.)

[†] On Sacrilege, and the state of the law respecting it in the twelfth century, see Gratian's *Decretum*, Pars II., causa 17, quæst. 4.

[‡] *late?* (Roke.). Mr. Gage Rokewode's correction is evidently right. Among the glosses to the passage quoted in the preceding note from Gratian, there is one which says, that if certain acts had been condemned beforehand by the bishop on pain of excommunication, "tum dicerum quod statim excommunicatus est sacrilegus, non ratione sacrilegii, sed *ratione sententiæ dudum latae*."

non intelligunt quantum facinus sit tale sacrilegium facere, ut ceteri magis timeant, istos nominatim et publice excommunicabo, et, ne in aliqua parte derogetur justitiæ, a domesticis et servantibus meis incipiam.”

Sicque factum est, acceptis stolis et accensis candelis. Exierunt ergo omnes ab ecclesia, et, accepto consilio, omnes se exspoliaverunt, et omnino nudi præter femoralia prostraverunt se ante ostium ecclesiæ. Cumque venissent assessores abbatis, monachi et clerici, et dicerent lacrimabiliter, quod plusquam centum homines nudi ita jacerent, lacrimatus est et abbas. Rigorem tamen juris in verbo et vultu præferens, et pietatem animi dissimulans, a consiliariis suis voluit cogi, ut pœnitentes absolverentur, sciens quod misericordia superexaltanda est iudicio, et quod ecclesia omnes pœnitentes recipit. Verberati ergo omnes acriter et absoluti, juraverunt omnes, quod starent iudicio ecclesiæ de sacrilegio perpetrato.

In crastino vero data est eis pœnitentia secundum instituta canonum, et sic

men in both parties, and they know not how great a crime is such notable sacrilege, that the others might fear the more I will excommunicate them by name and publicly, and that justice may not be in any wise lacking, I will begin with my domestics and servants.”

Then this was done, when we had robed and lighted the candles. And all went out from the church, and having taken counsel, they all stripped themselves, and, naked except for their underclothes, prostrated themselves before the door of the church. And when the assessors of the abbot had come, monks and clerks, they told him in lamentable tones that more than a hundred men lay thus naked, and the abbot was grieved. Yet showing the rigour of the law in his word and face, and concealing the kindness of his heart, he wished to be compelled by his advisers to absolve the penitents, knowing that mercy should be exalted against judgment, and that the church should receive all penitents. Therefore all were heavily scourged and absolved, and all swore that they would abide by the judgment of the church for the sacrilege which had been done.

But next day a penance was assigned to them according to the provisions

omnes ad unitatem concordiae revocavit abbas, minas terribiles omnibus proponens qui in dicto vel in facto materiam discordiae praeberent. Conventicula autem et spectacula prohibuit publice fieri in cimiterio; et sic, omnibus ad bonum pacis reductis, burgenses cum domino suo abbate diebus sequentibus comederunt cum gaudio magno.

*How the monks were
restored to Coventry.*

A.D. 1197.

Facta est commissio[†] domini papae H. Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, et domino Lincolnien- si, et S. abbati Sancti Ædmundi, de reformatione Conventrensis ecclesiae et de monachis restituendis, sine causae recognitione. Convocatis ergo partibus apud Oxneford, receperunt iudices literas precatórias a domino rege, ut negotium illud poneretur in respectum. Archiepiscopo et episcopo dissimulantibus et tacentibus, et quasi clericorum favorem venantibus, solus abbas aperte loquebatur, monachus pro monachis de Conventria, eorum

of the canons, and so the abbot received all in full peace, and threatened terrible things to all who in word or deed should produce cause for dispute. Then also he publicly forbade meetings and spectacles to be held in the cemetery, and so, when everything had been restored to peace, the burghers ate with the lord abbot on the days following with great joy.

A commission of the lord pope¹²⁷ was issued to Hubert, archbishop of Canterbury, and the lord bishop of Lincoln, and to Samson, abbot of St. Edmund's, for the reformation of the church of Coventry and for the restoration of the monks, without hearing the case again. And so the parties to the suit met at Oxford, and the judges received letters from the lord king, asking that the matter might be postponed. Then the archbishop and the bishop dissembled and kept silence, and as it were sought the favour of the clerks. But the abbot alone spoke openly as a monk for the monks of Coventry, publicly favouring their

[†] Hugh de Nunant, bishop of Lichfield and Coventry (on whose career see Stubbs' preface to the Rolls ed. of Gervase of Canterbury), had a violent dislike for all monks, and whenever he could, put secular canons in their place. He had now turned out the monks at Coventry, and the natural result is a papal commission.

¹²⁷ An account of this commission is to be found in Gervase (i., 550), while in Hoveden (IV., 35-7), there is to be found the papal letter giving orders for their restoration. As to their expulsion by Hugh Nunant, see note to p. 86. In Richard of Devizes there is an amusing description of his hatred for monks (pp. 64-7).

causam publice fovens et defendens. Et eo procurante, eo tenus processum est illa die, quod quædam simplex saisina facta fuit uni ex monachis de Conventria cum uno libro. Sed dilata fuit corporalis institutio ad tempus, ut sic saltem petitioni domini regis satisfaceret abbas;

vero illo tempore quatuordecim monachos de Conventria, qui ibi conveniant, recepit in hospitio suo, et sedentibus monachis ad mensam ex una parte domus, et ex alia parte magistris scholarum,[†] qui summoniti fuerant, laudabatur abbas magnanimus et magnificus in expensis, nec unquam videbatur in vita sua magis lætus quam tunc temporis fuit, pro reverentia monastici ordinis reformandi.

A.D. 1198 January 13.

Instante festo sancti Hilarii, perrexit abbas cum magna hilaritate Conventreiam, nec victus labore nec expensis, et dicebat quod si oporteret eum feretro equitatorio portari, non remaneret. Veniente eo Conventreiam, et quinque diebus expectante archiepiscopum, omnes monachos præno-

case and defending them. And by his means, it advanced so far on that day that a certain simple seisin was made to one of the monks of Coventry to the value of one pound. But the restoration of the whole body was for a while delayed, that to this extent at least the abbot might meet the request of the lord king.

At that time fourteen monks of Coventry, who were present there, were entertained by the abbot in his lodging, and while the monks were seated at table in one part of the house, and the masters of the schools, who had been invited, the abbot was praised as being magnanimous and magnificent in his entertainment, nor was he ever in his life seen in better spirits than then, owing to his zeal for the reform of the monastic order.

And when the next feast of St. Hilary came, the abbot went with great gladness to Coventry, and was overcome neither by labour nor by his expenses, and he said that if he had to be borne in a horse litter, he still would not tarry. Then he came to Coventry, and for five days waited for the archbishop, and honourably maintained all the

[†]Not, apparently, Oxford teacher specially; but *scholastici*, or schoolmasters from the monasteries and collegiate churches which were within easy reach of Oxford. Samson has been a schoolmaster himself, and would be glad thus to show his respect for the calling.

minatos cum servientibus eorum honorifice secum tenuit, donec creatus fuit novus prior, et monachi sollemniter introducti essent. “Qui habet aures audiendi, audiat” factum memoriale.

*How the abbot endowed
schools at Saint Edmund's.
A.D. 1198.*

Postquam convenit inter abbatem S. et R. de Scalis super medietate advocationis ecclesie de Wetherdene, et idem R. recognovisset Sancto Ædmundo et abbati jus suum; abbas, nulla conventionem prius habita, nullo prius facto promisso, dedit illam ecclesie medietatem quæ eum contingebat magistro R. de Scalis fratri ejusdem militis, hac conditione, ut annuam pensionem trium marcarum per manum nostri sacristæ redderet magistro scholarum, quincunque legeret in villa Sancti Ædmundi.

Hoc autem fecit abbas memorandæ pietatis ductus affectu, et sicut prius emerat domos lapideas ad scholas regendas, ut pauperes clerici quieti essent a conductione domus, ita de cetero essent quieti ab omni exactione denariorum, quos magister scholarum, ex consuetudine, exigebat pro eruditione sua; Domino autem Deo volente,

said monks with their servants, until a new prior was created and the monks solemnly introduced into the church. He who has ears to hear, let him hear;¹²⁸ the deed is worthy of remembrance.

After these things an agreement was made between abbot Samson and Robert de Scales as to the half of the advowson of the church of Wetherden, and the same Robert acknowledged the right of St. Edmund and of the abbot. The abbot, when no agreement had been made beforehand, and no promise had been given, gave the half of that church which belonged to him to master Roger de Scales, brother of the same knight, on condition that he would render an annual pension of three marks by the hand of our sacristan to the master of the schools, who should read in the town of St. Edmund's.

The abbot was led to do this by motives of memorable generosity, and since he had already bought stone houses for the purposes of the school that the poor clerks might be quit from house rent, so hence forth they were free from all exaction of money, which the master of the schools had, according to custom, exacted for their education.

¹²⁸ Matt. xi., 15.

et abbate vivente, tota medietas prædictæ ecclesiæ, quæ valet, sicut dicitur, centum solidos, ad tales usus converteretur.

*Concerning improvements
which the abbot made in
the abbey.*

Cum abbas in villis suis per abbatiam multa et varia ædificia construxisset, et perhendinasset ad maneria sua sæpius et frequentius quam nobiscum domi, tandem quasi in se rediens, et quasi bonum in melius comumtans, dixit se magis solito domi commoraturum, et ædificia infra curiam ad usus necessarios facturum, respectum habens ad interiora et exteriora, et sciens quia “præsentia domini proventus est agri.”[†]

Stabula ergo et officinas in curia circumcirca, quæ coopertæ erant arundine prius, novis tectis appositis, lateribus cooperiri iussit, procurante H. sacrista, ut sic omnis timor excluderetur et periculum ignis. Et ecce tempus acceptabile, dies desideratus! quod non sine gaudio scribo, qui curam hospitum habeo. Ecce! jubente abbate, re-

Then by the will of God and in the lifetime of the abbot, the whole half of that church, which was worth, so it is said, a hundred shillings, was turned to such uses.

Now when the abbot had built many different buildings in his townships throughout the abbacy, and had taken up his residence on them more often and more frequently than with us at home, at last he returned, as it were, to himself. And making good, as it were, better, he said that he would stay at home more than had been his wont, and that he would build houses which were needed, regarding things within and without, and knowing that the presence of the master is the profit of the field.

Accordingly he ordered that the stables and offices in and around the court, which had previously been covered with reeds, should be covered with new roofs, made of slates, by means of Hugh the sacristan,¹²⁹ that so all fear might be removed and all danger of fire. And behold the acceptable time, the day which had been

[†] Mr. Rokewode cites “Pallad[ius] *de Re Rustica*” I. i. tit. 6, but I have been unable to verify the reference.

¹²⁹ On the deposition of William Wardell, abbot Samson appointed his namesake the precentor as sacristan, as appears from *Jocelin* (text, pp. 46 and 48). Apparently the appointment was merely a temporary one. In the *Gesta Sacristarum* (*Mem. II.*, 291–2) Hugh is given as the successor of William Wardell, and an account of his acts is to be found there.

sonat curia ligonibus et machinis cæmentariis ad subvertendam domum hospitem, et jam fere tota est prostrata: de reædificatione cogitet Altissimus!

desired! Of this I cannot write without joy, for that I had the care of the guests. Behold! by order of the abbot, the court resounded with spades and with the tools of masons, that the guest-house might be overthrown, and now was almost entirely razed, since the Highest planned its restoration!

Lardearium novum sibi construxit abbas in curia, et vetus lardearium conventui ad opus camerarii dedit, quod indecenter sub dormitorio fuerat. Cappellæ sancti Andreæ et sanctæ Katerinæ et sanctæ Fidis noviter plumbo coopertæ sunt.[†] Multæ quoque emendationes infra ecclesiam et extra factæ sunt. Si non credis, aperi oculos tuos et vide.

The abbot built a new larder for himself in his court, and gave the old larder of the monastery for the use of the chamberlain, since it was unfittingly situated under the dormitory. The chapels of St. Andrew and St. Catherine and St. Faith were newly covered with lead. And many improvements were effected within and without the church. If you do not believe, open your eyes and behold!

Tempore quoque suo facta est elemosinaria nostra lapidea, quæ prius erat debilis et lignea, ubi quidam frater noster Walterus medicus, tunc temporis elemosinarius, multum apposuit, quod arte medicinali adquisivit.

And in his time also our stone almonry was constructed, which had before been out of repair and built of wood, and to the cost of this one of our brothers, Walter the physician, who was then almoner, contributed that which he had made from the practice of medicine.

Item videns abbas quod tabula argentea magni altaris, et multa alia preciosa ornamenta, alienata fuerant propter

Moreover, when the abbot saw that the silver table of the high altar, and many other precious ornaments, had

[†] The ground plan and ichnography of the great abbey church of Bury will form the subject of a special study in the second volume.

recuperationem de Mildenhala et redemptionem regis Ricardi, tabulam illam noluit reformare nec alia consimilia, quæ consimili casu possent evelli et distrahi; sed ad cristam faciendam pretiosissimam super feretrum gloriosi martyris Ædmundi studium suum convertit, ut ibi ornamentum suum poneretur unde nullo casu posset abstrahi, nec aliquis hominum manus auderet apponere. Quippe captivato rege Ricardo in Alemannia, non erat thesaurus in Anglia, qui non daretur vel redimeretur, sed feretrum Sancti Ædmundi remansit intactum.

been alienated for the recovery of Mildenhall and for the ransom of king Richard, he would not restore that table or other similar things, which for a like pur pose might be torn away and distrained. But he turned his attention to the construction of a most valuable crest over the shrine of the glorious martyr Edmund, that his ornament might be placed there, whence for no reason could it be taken away, and where no man would dare to lay hands upon it. Indeed, when king Richard was taken captive in Germany, there was no treasure in England which was not given or for which redemption was not made, yet the shrine of St. Edmund remained intact.

Venit tamen in questionem coram justitiariis ad scaccarium utrum feretrum Sancti Ædmundi saltem in parte excrustaretur ad redemptionem regis Ricardi, et abbas se erigens respondit: "Scitote pro vero, quod nunquam hoc fiet per me, nec est homo qui me ad hoc posset cogere, ut consentiam. Sed aperiam ostia ecclesiæ; intret qui velit, accedat qui audeat." Responderunt singuli justitiiarii cum juramentis: "Nec ego accedam, nec ego accedam. In remotos et absentes sævit Sanctus Ædmundus; multo magis in præsentis sæviet, qui tunicam suam ei auferre voluerint." His dictis, nec feretrum

For when there was a dispute before the justices in the exchequer court as to whether the shrine of St. Edmund should be partially dismantled for the ransom of the king, the abbot arose and said, "Know it for the truth that this shall never be done by me, nor is there any man who can compel me to assent to this. But I will open the doors of the church; let him enter who will, let him approach who dares." And all the justices answered with oaths, "I will not come near it," "I will not come near it." And they said, "St. Edmund is even more angered against those who are far away and absent, than he is wi-

fuit excrustatum, nec inde pretium datum. Cæteris ergo omissis, conversus est animus abbatis satis consulte et provide ad cristam feretri fabricandam. Et jam resonant laminæ aureæ et argenteæ inter malleum et incudem, et “tractant fabrilia fabri.”†

*How the abbot disputed
with the king as to the
wardship of the land of
Adam de Cokefield.
About A.D. 1198*

Adam de Cokefeld moriens filiam trium mensium reliquit

hæredem; wardamque dedit abbas de feudo suo, ubi volebat. Rex vero Ricardus, sollicitatus a quibusdam familiaribus suis, petiit anxie wardam et puellam ad opus cujusdam servientis sui; quandoque per literas, quandoque per nuntios. Abbas vero respondit se wardam dedisse, et carta sua confirmasse; mittensque nuntium suum regi tentavit prece et pretio, si quomodo posset iram ejus mitigare.

Et respondit rex cum magna indignatione, quod se vindicaret de superbo abbate, qui ei contradixit, nisi desisteret pro reverentia Sancti Ædmundi

th those who are present and would take away his cloak.” And when this had been said, the shrine was not stripped, nor was a ransom paid for it. And for this cause the abbot omitted other things, and turned his mind with forethought and providence to the making of a crest for the shrine. And now the plates of gold and silver resounded between the hammer and the anvil, and the smiths worked with their tools.

Adam de Cokefield died,¹³⁰ and left a daughter of three months as his heir, and the abbot gave the wardship of the fief to whomsoever he would. But king Richard, at the request of some of his friends, earnestly sought the wardship and the child for the advantage of a servant of his own, both by letters and by messengers. But the abbot replied that he had given the wardship, and had confirmed the gift under his charter; and sending a messenger to the king, tempted him with prayers and presents, that he might so calm his wrath.

Then the king answered with great anger that he would avenge himself on the proud abbot, who opposed him, if he were not ready to refrain from

† Hor. Ep. ii. 1, 116.

¹³⁰add long note here

quem timuit. Redeunte ergo nuntio, abbas minas regis sapienter dissimulavit, et dixit: "Mittat rex si vult, et saisiet wardam; vim et potestatem habet faciendi voluntatem suam, et auferendi totam abbatiam. Ego nunquam flectar, ut hoc velim quod petit, nec per me hoc unquam fiet. Timendum enim est ne talia trahantur ad consequentiam in præjudicium successorum meorum; pro negotio isto nunquam regi pecuniam dabo. Videat Altissimus. Ego quicquid contigerit patienter sustinebo."

Cum ergo multi dicerent et crederent regem esse commotum versus abbatem, ecce! rex amicabiliter scripsit abbati, et mandavit ut de canibus suis aliquos ei daret. Abbas vero non immemor illius dicti sapientis,—

Munera (crede mihi) capiunt
hominesque deosque;
Placatur donis Jupiter ipse da-
tis,[†]

canes, sicut rex mandaverat, insuper et equos et alia munera pretiosa, ei transmisit. Quæ cum rex gratanter suscepisset, probitatem abbatis et fidelitatem

his reverence for St. Edmund whom he feared. Therefore the messenger of the abbot returned, and the abbot wisely concealed the threats of the king, and said, "Let the king send if he will, and take possession of the wardship; he has force and power to perform his will, and to take away the whole abbacy. I will never bend to do readily that which he desires, and it shall never be done by my means. For there is fear that such an action might be drawn into a precedent to the hurt of my successors, and for this matter I will never give the king money. Let the Most High regard it. I will bear patiently whatever may befall."

Then when many said and believed that the king was moved against the abbot, lo! the king wrote in a friendly way to the abbot, and sent word that he should present to him some of his dogs. And the abbot was mindful of the saying of a wise man, "Presents, believe me, move both men and gods, and Jupiter himself may be appeased with gifts." So he sent the dogs for which the king asked to him, and in addition he sent also horses and other valuable gifts. And when the king had graciously received these, he commended the uprightness of the abbot and

[†]Ovid. Art. Amat. iii. 653.

ejus publice coram comitibus et baronibus suis magnifice commendavit, et annulum pretiosum, quem dominus papa Innocentius tertius per magnam caritatem ei donaverat, primum scilicet donum quod ei post consecrationem suam oblatum fuerat, abbati per nuntios suos misit in signum familiaritatis et amoris, et per breve suum de xeniis sibi transmissis gratias multiplices egit.

How the customary dues of the town were changed.

Multi mirabantur de consuetudinibus quæ immutabantur, domino Samsone abbate vel jubente vel permittente. A tempore[†] quo villa Sancti Ædmundi nomen et libertatem burgi accepit,[‡] solebant homines de singulis domibus dare celerario unum denarium in principio Augusti, ad metendum segetes nostras, qui census dicebatur *rep-selver*; et antequam villa fuit libera,

his fidelity to his trust publicly in the presence of his earls and barons, and sent to the abbot in token of his friendship and love a valuable ring, which the lord pope Innocent the Third had given him for his great affection to him, and which was the first gift which had been made to him after his coronation. And he sent many things by his writ to him for the presents which he had sent.

Many marvelled at the changes in the customary dues which took place with the orders or consent of the lord abbot Samson. From the time when the town of St. Edmund's received the name and liberty of a borough,¹³¹ the men of every house had been wont to give to the cellarer one penny at the beginning of August for the reaping of our corn, which tax was called *rep-selver*. And before the town was free all were wont to reap as slaves, and on-

[†] From *A tempore to discordia concors* (p. 304) we possess an independent text; it may be seen at folio 123 of Harl. 1005.

[‡] In Appendix A. is an extract from Domesday Book, showing what was the state of things in the town of Bury at the time of the survey. What progress the town had made since then, to the end of the twelfth century, I have endeavoured to state as accurately as the materials will allow in the Introduction.

¹³¹ The liberties of St. Edmund's originated from the abbots, and not from the crown, and it would seem that they were first granted in the time of Edward the Confessor. It was at this time also that the name of St. Edmund's was substituted for that of Beodricsworth. The condition of the town in the time of *Domesday* may be found in Rokewode, who translates the passage dealing with St. Edmund's (p. 148–9), and in the appendix to the *Memorials* (I., 339). Some account of the progress made by St. Edmund's in the interval between *Domesday* and the time of abbot Samson is to be found in the Introduction by Arnold to the *Memorials* (Vol. I.)

solebant omnes metere ut servi; sola hospitia militum et capellanorum et servientium curiæ quæta erant a tali censu. Processu temporis, pepercit celerarius quibusdam ditioribus villæ, nichil exigens ab eis;

alii burgenses, hoc videntes, publice dicebant, quod nemo qui haberet messuagium proprium deberet dare illum denarium, sed illi qui alienas domos conducebant. Postea, omnes communiter hanc libertatem petebant, convenientes inde dominum abbatem, et annum redditum pro tali exactione offerentes; abbas vero, attendens qualiter celerarius turpiter ibat per villam ad colligendum *rep-selver*, et qualiter faciebat capi vadia in domibus pauperum, quandoque tripodes, quandoque ostia, quandoque alia utensilia, et qualiter vetulæ exhibant, cum colis suis, minantes et exprobrantes celerario et suis, decrevit ut viginti solidi darentur singulis annis celerario ad *portmanemot* proximum, per manum præfecti, ante Augustum, a burgensibus qui attornaverunt redditum ad hoc solvendum.

Sicque factum est, et carta nostra confirmatum; data eis alia quietantia cuiusdam consuetudinis quæ dicitur *sor-*

ly the houses of the knights and chaplains and servants of the court were free from this tax. But as time passed, the cellarer spared some of the richer men of the town and exacted nothing from them.

When the other burghers saw this, they said publicly that no one who had a messuage of his own ought to pay that penny, but only those who rented the houses of others. Afterwards, all in common sought this freedom, coming to the lord abbot about it, and offering an annual payment in place of this exaction. Then the abbot learnt that the cellarer had gone through the town to collect *rep-selver* in a wrongful manner, and that he had caused sureties to be taken from the houses of the poor men, taking sometimes tripods, and at others doors, and other goods, and how the old women appeared with their distaffs, threatening and cursing the cellarer and his men. And he decreed that twenty shillings should be given to the cellarer every year at the next portman-moot, by the hand of the bailiff, before August, by the burghers who should give money to pay this.

And this was done, and confirmed by our charter. And they were given quit-tance from a certain customary due

peni, pro iiij. solidis ad eundem terminum reddendis. Solebat enim celerarius accipere unum denarium per annum, de qualibet vacca hominum ville pro exitu et pastura; nisi forte essent vel vaccæ capellanorum, vel servientium curiæ, quas vaccas solebat imparcare, et circa hoc multum laborare.

Post autem, cum abbas de hoc loqueretur in capitulo, indignabatur conventus et moleste tulit, unde et Benedictus supprior in capitulo respondens pro omnibus dixit: "Ille, ille abbas Ordingus, qui illic jacet, non faceret tale quid pro quingentis marcis argenti." Abbas vero inde iratus rem distulit ad tempus.

*Concerning a dispute
between the cellarer and
the sacristan.*

H. sacristam de pertinentiis officiorum suorum, ita quod sacrista volebat accommodare celerario ergastulum villæ ad includendum latrones, qui capiebantur in feudo celerarii. Unde celerarius æpius vexabatur, et, latronibus evadentibus, vituperabatur pro defectu justitiæ.

Item facta est contentio magna, inter R. celerarium et

which is called sor-penny, in return for four-shillings to be paid at the same time. For the cellarer had been wont to receive one penny a year for each cow, belonging to the men of the city, which went out to pasture, unless the cows were those of the chaplains or servants of the court, and these cows he used to put in the pound, and about this he used to have much trouble.

But later on, when the abbot spoke of this in the chapter, the monastery was indignant and angry, and so Benedict the sub-prior made answer for all in the chapter, and said, "He, that abbot Ording, who lies there, would not have done such a thing for five hundred marks of silver." But the abbot was angry at this, and postponed the matter for a time.

Also a dispute arose between Roger the cellarer and Hugh the sacristan concerning the perquisites of their offices, so that the sacristan would not lend to the cellarer the prison in the town for the imprisonment of robbers, who were taken in the fee of the cellarer. Wherefore the cellarer was often vexed, and when the robbers escaped, was blamed for the failure of justice.

Contigit autem, quod quidam libere tenens de celerario, extra portam manens, Ketel nomine, latrocinio calumniatus et duello victus, suspensus erat. Dolebat autem conventus propter opprobria burgensium, dicentium quod, si esset homo ille manens infra burgum, non pervenisset ad duellum, sed iuramentis vicinorum suorum se adquietasset, sicut libertas est eorum qui manent infra burgum.

But it happened that a certain free tenant of the cellarer who remained without the gate, a man called Ketel, being accused of robbery and defeated in a trial by battle, was hanged. And the monastery was grieved at the abusive words of the burghers, who said that if the man had lived within the gate, the matter would not have come to trial by battle, but that he would have been acquitted by the oaths of his neighbours, as was the privilege of those who dwelt within the borough.

Videntes ergo hoc abbas et sanior pars conventus, et attendentes quod homines, tam extra burgam quam infra, nostri sunt, et omnes debent eadem libertate frui infra *bannamleucam*,[†] præter lancettos[‡] de Herdewic et pares eorum, consulte providerunt quomodo posset hoc fieri.

And when the abbot and the more reasonable section of the monastery saw this, and observed that the men, both without and within the borough are our men, and that all should enjoy the same liberty within the jurisdiction of the abbey,¹³² except the villeins adscript to the soil¹³³ at Hardwick and their like, provided with care that this should be so.

Volens itaque abbas officia sacristiæ

Then the abbot being anxious to defi-

[†]Ducange defines *bannaleuca* (*bannum leugæ*, *bannileuca*, *banleuca*) as a certain territory by the boundaries of which the jurisdiction and immunities of any place, whether a town or monastery, were limited. *Bannum* is here used in the sense of jurisdiction, or of the ground within which such jurisdiction is exercised. And because the amount of territory so enfranchised was usually reckoned at a league either way, the phrase *banna leuca*, or *banlieue*, came into use.

¹³²This amounted to the distance of one mile's radius by the charter of Edward the Confessor (*Mon.*, III., 138, No. vii., ed. 1846), and by a bull of Alexander III. (Rokewode, p. 149).

[‡]"Colonorum species apud Anglos præstationibus et operis obnoxia"; Ducange. Spelman says lancettus is a corruption of *land-seta*, with which compare *cot-seta*, a cottier. It was a tenure by low and menial services.

¹³³Lancetti. As to their duties, see Rokewode, p. 150.

et celerarii certis articulis, determinare, et contentiones sedare, quasi fovendo partem sacristæ, præcepit, ut servientes præfecti villæ et servientes celerarii intrarent simul feudum celerarii ad capiendos latrones et malefactores, et præfectus dimidium lucri haberet pro incarceratione et custodia et labore suo, et curia celerarii veniret ad *portmanne-mot*, et ibi communi consilio judicarentur judicandi. Statutum est etiam, ut homines celerarii venirent ad domum thelonei cum aliis, et ibi renovarent pleggios suos, et scriberentur in rolla præfecti, et ibi darent præfecto denarium, qui dicitur *borth-selver*, et celerarius haberet dimidiam partem; sed nunc nihil omnino inde capit celerarius.

ne with definite conditions the offices of the cellarer and of the sacristan, and to calm disputes, as though he favoured the side of the sacristan, gave orders that the servants of the bailiff of the town and the servants of the cellarer should enter together the fee of the cellarer to take robbers and malefactors. And he ordered that the bailiff should have half the pay due for the imprisonment and guarding of the men and for the labour required, and that the court of the cellarer should go to the portman-moot, and that there cases which had to be adjudged should be adjudged with common assent. And it was also resolved that the men of the cellarer should go to the toll-house with the rest, and there renew their sureties, and that they should be inscribed in the roll of the bailiff, and pay a penny to the bailiff there, which payment is called *borth-selver*, and that the cellarer should have half of it. Now, however, the cellarer receives nothing on this account.

Hoc autem totum fuit factum, ut omnes æquali libertate gauderent. Dicunt tamen adhuc burgenses, quod suburbani non deberent esse quieti de theloneo in foro, nisi fuerint in gilda mercatorum. Præfectus autem, abbate dissimulante, placita et forisfacturas sibi

All this was done that all might enjoy equal liberty. But the burghers still say that those who dwell without the town ought not to be free from market toll, unless they are members of the gild merchant. And the bailiff, with the assent of the abbot, claims the pleas and

vendicat de feudo celerarii his diebus.

*Concerning the customs
and dues of the cellarer.*

Antiquæ consuetudines celerarii, quas vidimus, tales fuerunt; celerarius habebat messuagium et horrea sua juxta fontem Scuruni, ubi sollemniter curiam suam solebat tenere de latronibus et omnibus placitis et querelis, et ibi solebat ponere homines suos in plegios et inrollare, et renovare singulis annis, et inde lucrum capere sicut præfectus capiebat ad *portmane-mot*. Quod messuagium, cum horto adjacente, quem nunc infirmarius tenet, fuit mansio Beodrici, qui fuit antiquitus dominus istius villæ, unde et villa dicta fuit Beodrichesworth, cujus campi dominici nunc sunt in dominico celerarii. Quod autem nunc vocatur *averland*, fuit terra rusticorum ejus. Erat autem summa tenementi ejus et suorum tricesies triginta acræ terræ, quæ adhuc sunt campi istius villæ, quorum servitium, cum villa fuit facta libera, dividebatur in duas partes, ut sacrista sive præfectus acciperet liberum census, scilicet de qualibet acra duos denarios; celerarius haberet araturas et

forfeitures of the fee of the cellarer to this day.

The old customs of the cellarer, which we have seen, were as follows:—The cellarer had a messuage and barns near Scurun's well. There he was wont to hold his court solemnly for the trial of robbers and all other pleas and disputes. There he used to place his men in pledge and enrol them, and to renew the pledges every year, and to take for this such money as the bailiff took at the portman-moot. This messuage, with the garden adjoining it, which a tenant holds now, was the manor of Beodric,¹³⁴ who was formerly lord of that town, and the town was therefore formerly called Beodricsworth, and his demesne lands are now in the demesne of the cellarer. That which is now called averland was the land of his villeins. The total amount of his holding and those of his men was thirty times thirty acres of land, and these are still the fields of the town. The service from this, when the town was made free, was divided into two parts, so that the sacristan or bailiff might receive a free tax of twopence from each acre. The cellarer

¹³⁴Beodricsworth means the "estate of Beodric." The name itself means "a table chieftain," according to Arnold (*Mem.*, I., iv., note). Abbo (*Mem.*, I., 19) calls the place "a royal township," which may be explained by the statement of Hermannus (*Mem.* I., 33) that Beodric was of the royal house of East Anglia, and that the township was granted to him by a king of the same name.

alia servitia, scilicet araturam unius rodæ pro qualibet acra sine cibo (quæ consuetudo adhuc observatur);

was to have the ploughing and other services, that is, the ploughing of one rood for every acre without giving of food, and this custom is still observed.

haberet et faldas ubi omnes homines villæ, præter senescaldum qui propriam faldam habet, tenentur ponere oves suas (quæ consuetudo adhuc observatur); haberet et *aver-peni*, scilicet pro singulis triginta acris ij. denarios; quæ consuetudo mutata fuit ante mortem H. abbatis, Gilberto de Aluedena existente celerario.

He was also to have the folds where all the men of the town, with the exception of the steward, who has his own fold, were bound to place their sheep, and this custom is still observed. And he was to have also ave-penny, that is twopence for every thirty acres, but this custom was changed before the death of abbot Hugh, when Gilbert de Elveden was cellarer.

Solebant autem homines villæ, jubente celerario, ire apud Laginghehe[†] et reportare avragium de anguillis de Sutareia, et sæpe vacui redire et ita vexari sine aliquo emolumento celerarii; unde convenit inter eos, ut singulæ triginta acræ de cetero darent unum denarium per annum, et homines remanerent domi. Terræ autem illæ, nunc tempore, in tot partes divisæ sunt, quod vix scitur a quo ille census dari debet; ita quod vidi celerarium in uno anno capere xxvii. denarios, sed vix nunc potest habere x. denarios et obolum.

The men of the town, by order of the cellarer, were wont to go to Lakenheath, and to bring back a catch of eels from Southrey,¹³⁵ and often they returned empty-handed, so that they were burdened without profit to the cellarer, wherefore it was agreed among them that henceforth every thirty acres of land should pay one penny a year, and the men remain at home. That land, however, is now so divided that it is hard to tell what rent should be paid from it, with the result that I have seen the cellarer in one year take twenty-seven pence, while now he can hardly take tenpence halfpenny.

[†] Alter textus (J'), qui hunc locum exhibet (vide Proleg., §16), habet *Lakinghethe*.

¹³⁵ For the grant of fish by Elfgiva, wife of Canute, see *Monasticon* (ed. 1846, III., 137, No. v.). Cp. Rokwode (pp. 150–1).

Item celerarius solebat habere potestatem in viis extra villam, ita quod nulli licuit fodere cretam vel argillam sine licentia ejus. Solebat etiam summonere fullones villæ, ut ei accomoderent pannos ad sal suum ducendum. Alioquin ipse prohiberet eis usum aquarum, et caperet telas quas ibi inveniret; quæ consuetudines adhuc observantur. Item quicumque emit a celerario bladum vel aliud, solebat esse quietus de theloneo ad portam villæ quando exiret, unde celerarius rem suam carius vendebat, quod adhuc observatur. Item celerarius solet accipere theloneum de lino, tempore rotationis, scilicet unam bottam de qualibet cerna. Item solus celerarius debet, vel solebat habere, liberum taurum in campis hujus villæ; nunc habent plures. Item quando aliquis delegabat terram burgagii in elemosinam conventui, et hoc assignabatur celerario vel alio officiali, terra illa solebat de cetero esse quieta de *haggovele*, et maxime celerario propter dignitatem officii, quia secundus pater est in monasterio, vel propter reverentiam conventus, quia favorabilis debet esse conditio eorum qui victum nostrum procurant; sed talem consuetudinem dicit abbas esse injustam, ubi sacrista amittit servitium suum.

Again, the cellarer used to have authority in the roads without the town, so that no one was permitted to dig for chalk or clay without a licence from him. And he used to summon the fullers of the town, that they should give cloth for his chalk. Otherwise, he would prohibit them the use of water, and would take the webs which he found there, and these customs still maintain. And also whoever bought of the cellarer corn or anything, used to be free from toll at the gate when he went out, for which cause the cellarer sold his goods at a higher price, and this custom still remains. Also the cellarer was wont to take toll from flax, when it was carried about, at the rate of one bundle from each load. And the cellarer alone ought, and used, to have a free bull in the fields of this town; now more men have free bulls. And whenever any one gave his land held in burgage in frank almon to the monastery, and this was handed over to the cellarer or to another official, that land was wont to be quit from *haggovele*, and especially when it was assigned to the cellarer, on account of the importance of his office, for that he is the second father in the monastery, and for respect to the monastery, since the state of those who procure our food ought to be good. This custom the abbot regards as unjust, since the

sacristan loses his service.

Item celerarius solebat warentizare servientibus curiæ, ut essent a scotto et tallagio quieti; sed nunc non est ita, quia burgenses dicunt, quod servientes curiæ debent esse quieti in eo quod sunt servientes, sed non in hoc quod tenent burgagium in villa, et quia ipsi vel uxores eorum faciunt publicas emptiones et venditiones in foro. Item celerarius libere solebat capere omnia sterquilinia ad opus suum, in omni vico, nisi ante ostia eorum qui habebant *averland*; illis enim solis licebat fimum colligere et habere. Ista consuetudo paulatim defecit tempore Hugonis abbatis, usque quod Dionisius et Rogerus de Hehingham fuerunt celerarii, qui, volentes antiquam consuetudinem revocare, ceperunt redas burgensium fimo oneratas, et eas exonerari fecerunt; sed reclamante multitudine burgensium et prævalente, quilibet in tenemento suo fimum colligit, et pauperes suum vendunt, quando et cui voluerint.

Item celerarius in foro istius villæ tale privilegium solet habere, quod ipse vel emptores sui primam emptionem habebunt de omni cibo ad opus conventus, si abbas domi non fuerit. Emptores abbatis vel celerarii, qui prius ve-

The cellarer was also wont to warrant the servants of the court, that they should be free from scot and tallage, but now this is not the case, for the burghers say that the servants of the court ought to be quit indeed as far as they are servants, but not in so far as they hold land in burgage in the town, and in so far as they or their wives buy or sell publicly in the market. The cellarer was wont to take all the manure in every street for his use, except such as was before the doors of those who had *averland*; for they alone might collect and have it. That custom rather fell into abeyance in the time of abbot Hugh, until Dennis and Roger de Hengham were cellarers. They, wishing to revive the ancient custom, seized the manure carts of the burghers, and caused them to be unloaded. But as a number of burghers then resisted successfully, every one now collects the manure which is on his holding, and the poor sell theirs when and to whom they will.

The cellarer had also this right in the market of the town, that he and his agents should buy first in the case of all food for the use of the monastery, if the abbot were not at home. The buyers of the abbot or of the cellarer,

nient in foro, prius ement, sive isti sine illis, sive illi sine istis. Si autem hinc et inde præsentes fuerint, deferendum est emptoribus abbatis. Item tempore quo venditur allec, ement emptores semper abbatis centenarium de allec minus quam ceteri, uno obolo; similiter celerarius et sui emptores. Item si summa de pisce vel alio cibo venerit in curiam primo vel in forum venerit, et summa ilia non fuerit discargiata de equo vel de carecta, celerarius vel emptores sui summam integram ement et secum ducent sine theloneo. Abbas autein Samson præcepit emptoribus suis, ut cederent celerario et suis, quia, sicut ipse dixit, maluit ut ipse esset in defectu quam suus conventus. Emptores ergo, honore se invicem prævenientes si aliquid emendum invenerint quod non sufficiat ambabus partibus, rem pariter emunt et a pari dividunt, et sic capitis ad membra, patris ad filios, remanet discordia concors.[†]

whichever should come first to the market, was to buy first, either the former without the latter, or the latter without the former; in case they both came at the same time, the preference was given to the abbot's agents. At the time when herrings were sold, the abbot's agents were always to buy a hundred herrings for a penny less than other men, and the cellarer and his agents had the same right. If a load of fish or other food should come first to the court or should come into the market, and the load had not been taken from the horse or from the cart, then the cellarer and his agents might buy and take for themselves the whole load without toll. Abbot Samson, however, ordered his agents that they should give place to the cellarer and his agents, because, as he himself said, he would rather that he lost than his monastery. Accordingly, the agents, in honour preferring one another,¹³⁶ when anything came to be sold which was not enough for both parties, bought the thing jointly and divided it equally, and so discord became concord between the head and the members, and between the father and his sons.

¹³⁶ Rom. xii., 10.

[†] There seems to be an allusion to Lucan, *Phars.* i. 98; *mansit concordia discors*.

*How the author was
blamed for praising the
abbot too much.*

Poeta dixit,
“summa pet-
tit livor;”[†] hæc
idcirco repeto

quia, cum aliquis præsens scriptum
inspiceret, et tot bene acta legeret,
adulatorem abbatis me nominavit, et
venatorem favoris et gratiæ, dicens,
quod quædam suppressi tacitus, quæ
tacenda non essent. Cumque interro-
garem quæ et qualia, respondit: “Non-
ne vides, quod abbas dat eschaetas
terrarum de dominicis terris conven-
tus, et puellas hæredes terrarum, et
viduas, tam in villa Sancti Ædmun-
di quam extra, pro beneplacito suo?
Nonne vides, qualiter abbas abstrahit
sibi loquelas et placita calumnian-
tium, per breve regis, terras que sunt
de feudo conventus, et maxime illas
loquelas unde lucrum surgit; et illas
unde lucrum non sequitur, illas re-
mittit celerario vel sacristæ aut aliis
officialibus?”

Quibus respondi, ut scivi, forte bene,
forte male, dicens, quod quilibet do-
minus feudi, cui sit homagium, debet
de jure habere eschaetam, cum even-
rit in feudo, unde ipse accepit homa-

The poet has said that envy aims at
the highest, and so I relate that when a
certain person saw the present writing,
and read of so many good actions, he
called me a flatterer of the abbot, and
said that I was hunting after grace and
favour, telling me that I had passed
over in silence some things which ou-
ght not to have been left unmentioned.
And when I asked him what things,
and what sort of things these were, he
answered, “Have you not seen that
the abbot gives the escheated lands in
the demesnes of the monastery, and
heiresses of lands being minors, and
widows both within and without the
town of St. Edmund’s, to whomsoever
he will? Have you not seen that the
abbot has attracted to himself suits
and pleas of those who by the royal
writ claim lands which are of the fee
of the monastery, and more especially
suits in which there is money to be
gained; and that he passes on those
suits in which there is no profit to the
cellarer or the sacristan or the other
officials?”

And to this I answered as best I knew
how, and perhaps well, perhaps ill,
saying that every lord of a fief, to
whom homage is due, ought to have
the escheat by law, when there is one

[†] ante § 25.

gium; et consimili ratione, generale auxilium burgensium et wardas puorum et donationes viduarum et puellarum in illis feudis unde accepit homagium, quæ omnia soli abbati convenire videntur, nisi forte vacaverit abbatia. In villa tamen Sancti Ædmundi consuetudo extitit ratione burgi, ut proximus consanguineus habeat wardam pueri cum hæreditate, usque ad annos discretionis.

in the fief, whence he receives homage; and for a similar reason, ought to have a general aid from the burghers and the wardship of boys, and marriage rights over widows and girls, in those fees whence he has homage; and all these things seemed to belong to the abbot alone, unless by chance the abbacy should be vacant. In the town of St. Edmund's, however, as it is a borough, there is a custom that the wardship of a boy, until he comes to years of discretion, and his inheritance, vests with the nearest relative.

Item de loquelis et placitis respondi, me nunquam vidisse abbatem sibi usurpasse placita nostra, nisi pro defectu iustitiæ nostræ; sed tamen pecuniam aliquando accepisse ut, sua auctoritate interveniente, loquelæ et placita debitum sortirentur finem. Vidi etiam aliquando placita, quæ ad nos spectant, tractari in curia abbatis; quia non erat aliquis, qui in principio litis ex parte conventus forum allegaret.[†]

And as to suits and pleas, I answered that I had never seen the abbot usurp to himself our pleas, unless on account of a failure of justice on our part; but yet that he had sometimes received money that, by the intervention of his authority, suits and pleas might come to a right conclusion. And I have sometimes seen pleas, which belonged to us, conducted in the abbot's court, since there was no one who at the beginning of the case would claim the trial for the monastery.

*How there was a fire near
the shrine of Saint Edmund.
A.D. 1198.*

Anno gratiæ
m^o c. nonagesimo viij^o. voluit gloriosus

In the year of grace one thousand one hundred and ninety-eight, the glorious martyr Edmund willed to terrify our monastery, and to teach us that his bo-

[†]*forum allegaret*: lit. "might allege the court"; i.e., allege that the jurisdiction over the matter in litigation lay with the convent and not with the abbot.

martyr Ædmundus terrere conventum nostrum et docere, ut corpus ejus reverentius et diligentius custodiretur. Erat quidam ligneus tabulatus inter feretrum et magnum altare, super quem duo cerei, quos solebant custodes feretri reclutare, et cereum cereo superponere, et indecenter conjungere. Erant sub tabulato illo multa reposita indecenter, linum et filum et cera, et utensilia varia, immo quicquid veniebat in manus custodum, ibi reponebatur ostio et parietibus ferreis existentibus.

Cum ergo dormirent custodes nocte sanctæ Aleldrethæ, cecidit, ut credimus, pars cerei reclutati jam combusti super prædictum tabulatum pannis opertum, et cœpit omnia proxima quæ supra et subtus erant accendere, ita quod parietes ferrei omnino igne candescerent. Et ecce furor Domini, sed non sine misericordia, juxta illud, “cum iratus fueris, misericordiæ recordaberis.” Eadem enim hora cecidit horologium ante horas matutinas, surgensque magister vestiarii, hoc percipiens et intuens, cucurrit quantocius et, percussa tabula tanquam pro mortuo, sublimi voce clamavit dicens

dy should be more reverently and carefully guarded. There was a certain wooden floor between the shrine and the high altar, on which were two candles, which the guardians of the shrine used to relight. And they were wont to put one candle on another, and to stick them together carelessly. And under this floor many things were lying together in an untidy manner, such as flax and thread and wax and vessels of different sorts, in fact the keepers of the shrine used to put there whatever came into their hands, behind the door with iron sides which the place had.

On the night of St. Etheldreda's day then the keepers were asleep, and part of a candle, which had been relit, fell, as we believe, while it was still burning, on the same floor which was covered with rags. And it caught all things which were near it, and those above and underneath went on fire, so that the iron walls were all white hot. And lo! the anger of the Lord was kindled, but not without mercy, as it is written, In wrath remember mercy.¹³⁷ For in the same hour the clock struck before the hour of matins, and the master of the vestry arose and perceived and knew of the fire. Then

¹³⁷ Hab. iii., 2.

feretrum esse combustum.

he ran at once, and sounding the gong, as if for a dead man, he cried with a loud voice and said that the shrine was on fire.

Nos autem omnes accurrentes flammam invenimus incredibiliter sævientem, et totum feretrum amplectentem, et non longe a trabibus ecclesiæ ascendentem. Juvenes ergo nostri propter aquam currentes, quidam ad puteum, quidam ad horologium, quidam cucullis suis impetum ignis cum magna difficultate extinxerunt, et sanctuaria quædam prius diripuerunt. Cumque frigida aqua super frontem feretri fundetur, ceciderunt lapides et quasi in pulverem redacti sunt. Clavi autem, quibus laminæ argenteæ configebantur feretro, exiliebant a ligno subtus combusto ad spissitudinem digiti mei, et pendebant laminæ sine clavis una ex altera.

Then we all ran up and found the fire raging with incredible fierceness, and surrounding the whole shrine, and almost reaching the beams of the church. Then the young men ran for water, some to the well and some to the clock, and some used their hoods, and with great labour put out the fire. But first they stripped some of the altars. Then, when cold water had been poured on the front of the shrine, the stones fell and were reduced as it were to dust. And the nails with which the silver plates were fastened to the shrine came out of the wood, which had been burnt to the depth of my finger, and the plates hung one from another without nails.

Aurea quidem majestas in fronte feretri cum quibusdam lapidibus remansit firma et intacta, et pulcrior post ignem quam ante, quia tota aurea fuit.

Yet the golden image of the saint at the front of the shrine, and some stones, remained firm and unharmed, and the image was more beautiful after the fire than it had been before, because it was of pure gold.

Contigit etiam, volente Altissimo, tunc temporis magnam trabem, quæ solebat esse ultra altare, sublatam esse, ut nova sculptura repararetur.

Now it happened by the will of the Most High, that at this time the great beam, which had been over the altar, had been taken away that it might be

Contigit et crucem, et Mariolam, et Johannem, et loculum cum camisia sancti Ædmundi, et philateria cuin reliquiis, quæ ab eadem trabe pendere solebant, et alia sanctuaria quæ super trabem steterant, omnia prius sublata esse; alioquin omnia combusta essent, ut credimus, sicut pannus depictus combustus fuit, qui in loco trabis pendebat. Sed quid fieret si cortinata esset ecclesia?

Cum ergo securi essemus quod ignis in nullo loco perforasset feretrum, rimas et foramina, si qua essent, attentissime investigantes, et omnia frigida esse percipientes, mitigatus est in parte dolor noster: et ecce! clamaverunt quidam ex fratribus nostris cum magno ejulatu ciphum sancti Ædmundi esse combustum. Cumque plures hinc et inde quærerent lapides et laminas inter carbones et cineres, extraxerunt ciphum omnino inviolatum, jacente[†] in medio magnorum carbonum, qui jam extincti erant, et invenerunt eundem involutum panno lineo, sed semiusto. Pixis vero quercina, in qua ciphus de more ponebatur, combusta erat in pulverem, et solas ligaturæ fer-

newly carved. It happened also that the cross, and the little Mary, and the John, and the chest with the garment of St. Edmund, and the case containing the relics, which had formerly hung from the same beam, and other holy things which had stood on the beam, had all been carried away beforehand. Otherwise, we believe that they would all have been burnt, as a painted cloth was burnt, which was hanging in the place of the beam. But what would have happened if the church had been hung with curtains?

So when we were sure that the fire had nowhere entered the shrine, after carefully looking at the cracks and chinks, wherever they were, and after seeing that all was cold, our sorrow was greatly lessened. And lo! some of our brothers cried with much wailing that the cup of St. Edmund was consumed. And when many sought the stones and metal plates in all directions among the ashes and cinders, they brought forth the cup quite unharmed. It was lying in the midst of a heap of ashes, which were now cool, and it was found covered with a linen cloth, which, however, was half-burned. The oak chest, also, in which the cup was usually placed, had been

[†]lege, *jacentem*.

reæ et sera ferrea inventa sunt. Viso itaque miraculo, omnes lacrimati sumus præ gaudio.

Majorem ergo partem frontis feretri excrustatam videntes, et turpitudinem combustionis abhorrentes, de communi consilio, accersito clam aurifabro, laminas conjungi fecimus et feretro apponi, sine omni dilatione, propter scandalum; vestigia quoque combustionis, vel cera, vel alio modo cooperiri fecimus.

Sed teste evangelista, "Nichil opertum quod non revelabitur." Venientes summo mane peregrini oblaturi, nichil tale quid perceperunt: quidam tamen circumcirca intuentes quærebant, ubi fuit ignis quem circa feretrum fuisse jam audierant. Cumque ergo omnino celari non potuit, responsum est quærentibus, candelam cecidisse et manutergia tria combusta esse, etc. ad ignis calorem lapides quosdam in fronte feretri deperisse. Fingebat tamen fama mendax caput sancti esse combustum: quidam dicebant capillos tantum esse combustos; sed cognita postmodum veritate, obstructum est

burnt to ashes, and only the iron fastenings and the iron lock were found. Then when we saw this miracle, we all wept for joy.

Then when we saw that the greater part of the front of the shrine had been ruined, and were angered at the wickedness of the cause of the fire, with common assent a goldsmith was privately summoned, and we caused him to make plates and fix on the shrine without any delay, that the scandal might be avoided, and we caused the signs of the fire to be covered up with wax or in some other way.

But the gospel bears witness, There is nothing hid which shall not be revealed.¹³⁸ Very early in the morning there came strangers bearing gifts, and noticed nothing of the fire. Yet some of them looking round, asked where the fire round the shrine had been, of which they had already heard. And so when it was impossible to conceal it altogether, we answered those who asked that a candle had fallen and burnt three napkins, and that owing to the heat of the fire some stones on the front of the shrine had been destroyed. Yet lying rumour pretended that the head of the saint had been burnt; some said that only the hair had been

¹³⁸ Luke xii., 2.

os loquentium iniqua.[†]

Hæc omnia facta sunt, providente Domino, ut loca circa feretrum sancti sui honestius custodirentur, et ut propositum domini abbatis citius et sine dilatione debitum finem sortiretur; scilicet, ut ipsum ieretrum cum corpore sancti martyris securius et gloriosius in loco eminentiore poneretur; quia antequam hoc prædictum infortunium accidit, jam crista feretri usque ad medietatem facta fuit, et lapides marmorei ad elevandum et sustinendum feretrum, ex parte magna, parati et politi fuerant.

*How the abbot attributed
the fire to the greed of the
monks.*

his rumoribus; qui domum rediens, et in capitulum veniens, hæc et consimilia et etiam majora pericula dixit posse evenire propter peccata nostra, et maxime propter murmurationes nostras de cibo et potu; culpam quodammodo in universitatem conventus retorquens, potius quam in avaritiam

consumed; but in the end the truth was known, and the mouth of them that spoke lies was stopped.¹³⁹

Now all this was done, by the providence of the Lord, that the places round the shrine of His saint might be more honestly cared for, and that that which the lord abbot proposed might the more quickly come and without delay come to a fitting conclusion. For he proposed that the shrine, with the body of the glorious martyr, should be placed more securely and splendidly in a more prominent position. And, before this same misfortune befell, the crest of the shrine was half finished, and the marble stones for raising and supporting the shrine had been largely prepared and polished.

Valde dolebat dominus abbas qui absens erat, auditis

The lord abbot, who was absent, was greatly grieved when he heard these rumours. And on his return home, he came into the chapter and said that these and other like perils would result from our sins, and especially because of our murmuring about our food and drink. And he turned the blame to some degree rather on the whole monastery than on the avarice and carelessness of the guardians of the shrine.

[†] Another copy of §§75, 76, down to this point, is in Bod. 297, p. 423.
¹³⁹ Ps. lxxiii., 11.

et negligentiam custodum feretri.

Ut ergo nos prudenter induceret ad hoc, ut abstinentiam faceremus de pittantiis nostris, saltem uno anno, et, ad frontem feretri reparandam de puro auro, redditus de pitanceria apponeremus, ipse primus dedit exemplum largitatis, et totum thesaurum suum quem habebat de auro, scilicet xv. anulos aureos, valentes, ut creditur, sexaginta marcas, coram nobis ad reparationem feretri dedit. Nos autem pitanceriam nostram esse dandam ad tale opus, omnes concessimus; sed mutatum est consilium per sacristam dicentem, sanctum Ædmundum bene posse reparare feretrum suum sine tali auxilio.

Concerning the dream that a certain great person had, and how the abbot interpreted the same.

Tunc temporis venit aliquis magni nominis, nescio quis, qui visionem suam narravit abbati, unde ipse multum movebatur, et eam in pleno capitulo asperrima narravit prolatione; et exposuit hoc modo: "Verum est," inquit, "quod quidam vir magnus per visionem vidit, scilicet quod sanctus martyr Ædmundus videbatur extra feretrum suum jacere, et gemendo dicere se pannis suis exspoliatum et macilentum esse fame et siti, et suum cimiterium et atria ecclesiæ

Therefore, that he might skilfully lead us to abstain from our pittances, at least for one year, and that we might appropriate the revenues of the pittancy to the restoration of the shrine with pure gold, he gave the first example of generosity himself. For in our presence, he gave the whole treasure in gold, which he had, that is, fifteen golden rings of the value, it is believed, of sixty marks, towards the restoration of the shrine. And we all granted that our pittances should be given for this purpose, until our decision was changed by the sacristan, who said that St. Edmund was well able without such assistance to repair his own shrine.

At this time some great person, I know not who it was, came and told a vision of his to the abbot, whereby the abbot was much moved, and related it in full chapter with a very bitter speech. And he told it in this way: "That is a true vision," he said, "which a certain great man has seen. For he beheld the holy martyr Edmund lying without his shrine, and saying with groans that he was robbed of his garments and wasted with hunger and thirst, and that his cemetery and the halls of his church are carelessly guarded."

suæ negligenter custodiri.”

Et hoc somnium exposuit abbas coram omnibus, retorquens culpam in nos hoc modo: “Sanctus Ædmundus nudum se asserit, quia pannos vestros veteres subtrahitis nudis pauperibus, et inviti datis quod dare debetis, et de cibo et de potu similiter. Desidia et negligentia sacristæ et sociorum ejus patens[†] ex recenti infortunio combustionis, quæ fuit inter feretram et altare.”

How the monks interpreted the dream in a different way, and how they angered the abbot on that account.

His dictis con-
stristabatur
conventus, et
post capitulum
conveniebant plures fratres in
unum et interpretabantur somnium
hoc modo: “Nos,” inquit, “sumus
nuda membra sancti Ædmundi, et
conventus est nudum corpus ejus;
quia nos spoliati sumus antiquis con-
suetudinibus et libertatibus nostris.
Abbas omnia habet, cameriam, sa-
cristiam, cellariam; et nos perimus
fame et siti, qui victum nostrum non
habemus, nisi per clericum abbatis et
per ejus administrationem. Si custo-
des feretri negligentes fuerint, abbas
sibi imputet; quia tales ipse consti-

[†]legem patent.

And the abbot interpreted this dream in the presence of all, turning the blame on us in this way: “St. Edmund declares that he is naked because you withheld your old clothes from the naked poor, and give unwillingly that which you ought to give, and do the same in the matter of food and drink. The idleness, the neglect of the sacristan and his fellows, is very clear from the recent disaster of the fire which has occurred between the shrine and the altar.”

At these words the monastery was grieved, and after the chapter many of the brothers met together and interpreted the dream in this way: “We are the naked limbs of St. Edmund,” they said, “and the monastery is his naked body. For we have been despoiled of our ancient customary dues and liberties. The abbot has all things; the chamberlainship, the sacristy, the cellar. And we perish with hunger and thirst, when we cannot have our food save by means of a clerk of the abbot and through his ministration. If the guardians of the shrine were negligent, the abbot may put it down to himself, for he it was who appoin-

tuit." Hoc modo multi loquebantur in conventu.

Cum autem hæc interpretatio ostensa esset abbati in foresta de Herlaua, in redeundo de Lundoniis, valde iratus est et commotus, et respondens ait: "Volunt ipsi retorquere somnium illud in me; per os Dei! quam cito domum rediero, reddam eis consuetudines quas suas dicunt, et removebo clericum meum a celerario, et eos eis relinquam; et videbo sapientiam eorum in fine anni. Hoc anno residebam domi, et feci cellariam eorum servari sine debito; et tales michi reddunt gratiarum actiones!"

Rediens ergo domum abbas, habens in proposito transferre sanctum martyrem, humiliavit se coram Deo et hominibus, cogitans, ut se in omnibus emendaret, et pacem cum omnibus, et maxime cum conventu suo, reformaret. Sedens ergo in capitulo, celerarium et subclerarium per communem assensum nostrum eligi præcepit; et clericum suum removit, dicens quod, quicquid fecerat, propter commodum nostrum id fecerat, teste Deo et sanctis ejus, et se multis modis excusavit.

ted such men." And in this way many spoke in the monastery.

But when this interpretation was made known to the abbot, as he was in the forest of Harlow on his way back from London, he was very wroth and greatly moved, and he answered and said, "They would turn that dream against me. By the face of God! as soon as I shall reach home, I will restore to them what they call their customary dues, and I will take my clerk away from the cellarer, and I will leave them to their own devices. And at the end of the year I shall see how wise they are. For this year I have stayed at home, and I have caused their cellar to be supplied without debt. And they show such gratitude towards me!"

And so when he returned home, and was intending to translate the holy martyr, he humbled himself before God and men, thinking that he would amend his way in all things, and make peace with all men, and especially with his monastery. Then as he sat in the chapter, he ordered a cellarer and subcellarer to be chosen by our common assent; and he removed his clerk, saying that whatever he had done, he had done for our welfare, calling to witness God and His saints, and excusing himself in many ways.

Concerning the translation
of the body of Saint
Edmund.
A.D. 1198 Nov. 20.

Audite, cœli,
quæ loquar,
audiat terra
factum Sam-
sonis abbatis. Igitur,[†] appropinquante
festo sancti Ædmundi, politi sunt la-
pides marmorei, et parata sunt omnia
ad elevationem feretri. Celebrato igi-
tur die festi, sexta feria, sequente die
dominica, indictum est triduanum
ieiunium populo; et ostensa est eis
publice causa jejunii. Abbas autem
prædixit conventui, ut se præpararent
ad transferendum feretrum et consi-
stendum super magnum altare, donec
machina cementaria perficeretur; et
tempus et modum præfixit ad tale
opus.

Cum ergo venissemus illa nocte ad ho-
ras matutinas, stetit magnum feretrum
super altare, vacuum intus, ornatum
coriis albis cervinis, sursum et deor-
sum et circumcirca, quæ affigebantur
ligno clavis argenteis, et panellus unus
stetit deorsum juxta columnam eccle-
siæ, et sanctum corpus adhuc jacebat,
ubi jacere solebat. Percantatis laudi-

Hear, O Heaven,¹⁴⁰ the things which
I speak; give ear, O earth, to the deed
of abbot Samson. For, when the feast
of St. Edmund drew nigh, the marble
stones were polished, and all things
were made ready for the elevation of
the shrine. Accordingly, the feast was
celebrated on a Friday, and on the fol-
lowing Sunday a three days' fast was
proclaimed to the people, and the cau-
se for that fast was publicly announ-
ced. Moreover, the abbot preached to
the people that they should prepare
themselves for the transference of the
shrine and for placing it upon the hi-
gh altar, until the masons should have
completed their preparations. And he
appointed a time and method for so
great a work.

Therefore, when we had on that night
come to the time of matins, the great
shrine stood upon the altar empty
within, adorned with white doe-skins,
and one panel stood below against a
pillar of the church, and the holy body
lay still where it was wont to lie.¹⁴¹
Then hymns of praise were sung, and
we all went to take our discipline. Af-

¹⁴⁰ Isai. i., 2.

[†] The passage from this point, down to *pericula cautum* (p. 314), is extracted in Bod. 240, a text of the fourteenth century, p. 660. Another copy is in Bod. 297, p. 424.

¹⁴¹ That is, where it had lain since its translation by abbot Baldwin in 1095, for an account of which see Hermannus (*Mem.*, I., 84–9). The various translations of the relics of the saint are noticed in the table of dates to be found at the end of these notes.

bus, omnes accessimus ad disciplinas suscipiendas. Quo facto, vestiti sunt in albis dominus abbas et quidam cum eo, et accedentes reverenter, sicut decebat, festinabant detegere loculum.

Erat autem pannus lineus exterius, qui loculum et omnia cætera includebat, qui quibusdam ligamentis suis desuper ligatus inventus fuit; postea quidam pannus sericus, et postea alter lineus pannus, et postea tertius, et ita tandem discoopertus est locus stans super ligneum alveolum, ne ipse locus possit lædi a lapide marmoreo.

Jacuit super pectus martyris, affixus loculo exterius, angelus aureus ad longitudinem pedis humani, habens ensem aureum in una manu, et vexillum in altera; et subter erat foramen in operculo, ubi antiqui custodes martyris solebant manus imponere ad tangendum sanctum corpus. Et erat versus superscriptus imagini:

Martyris ecce zoma servat
Michaelis agalma.

Erantque annuli ferrei ad duo capita loculi, sicut solebat fieri in cista Noren-

ter that, the lord abbot and some with him were clothed in white raiment, and approaching with reverence, as was right, hastened to uncover the coffin.

Now there was a linen cloth outside, which covered the coffin and all the other things, and which was found to be fastened with some strings of its own. Next there was a silken cloth, and then another linen cloth, and then a third, and so at last the coffin was uncovered and stood upon a wooden stand, that the coffin might not be harmed by the marble stone.

Above the breast of the martyr, and on the outside of the coffin, there lay a golden angel of the length of a man's foot, having a golden sword in one hand and a standard in the other. And beneath it was a hole in the coffin's cover, where the former guardians of the martyr were wont to put in their hands to touch the holy body. And there was this verse written over the image:

Lo! the image of St. Michael keeps the martyr's corpse.

And there were iron rings at the two ends of the coffin, as there used to be

si.[†]

Sublevantes ergo loculum cum corpore, portabant usque ad altare, et apposui manum meam peccatricem in auxilium ad portandum, licet abbas præcepisset, ne aliquis accederet, nisi vocatus; et inclusus est loculus in feretro, panello apposito et conjuncto.

Putabamus omnes, quod abbas vellet loculum ostendere populo in octavis festi et reportare sanctum corpus coram omnibus; sed male seducti sumus, sicut sequentia docebunt. Feria quarta, canente conventu completorium, locutus est abbas cum sacrista et Waltero medico, et initum est consilium, ut duodecim fratres vocarentur, qui fortes essent ad portandos panellos feretri, et prudentes essent ad conjungendos eos et disjungendos. Dixitque abbas se habere in votis videre patrum suum, et se velle sibi associari sacristam et Walterum medicum ad inspectionem eam; et nominati sunt duo capellani abbatis, et duo custodes feretri, et duo magistri de vestiario; et alii sex, sacrista Hugo, Walterus medicus, Augustinus, Willelmus de Dice, Robertus, Ricardus.

in Danish chests.

Therefore raising the coffin with the body, they bore it to the altar, and I gave my sinful hand to help in the carrying, though the abbot had ordered that no one should approach unless he were summoned. And the coffin was enclosed in the shrine, the panel being put in place and shut up.

Now we all thought that the abbot would show the coffin to the people in the octave of the feast, and would have the holy body translated in the presence of all men; but we were quite deceived, as that which followed proved. On the Wednesday, while the monastery was chanting compline, the abbot spoke with the sacristan and Walter the physician, and having taken counsel, summoned twelve brothers, who were strong to bear the panels of the shrine, and were skilled in fastening and unfastening them. And the abbot said that he had prayed to see his patron saint, and that he wished that the sacristan and Walter the physician should be joined with him in making the inspection. And the two chaplains of the abbot were named, and the two guardians of the shrine, and the two masters of the vestry, and

[†] Ducange gives "Norrensis" as an occasional equivalent for "Northmannus." Does "cista Norensis" then mean "a Norwegian chest"?

six others, the sacristan Hugh, Walter the physician, Augustine, William de Diss, Robert and Richard.

Dormiente ergo conventu, vestiti sunt illi duodecim albis, et extrahentes loculum de feretro portaverunt illum, et ponentes super tabulam juxta antiquum locum feretri, paraverunt se ad disjungendum operculum, quod conjunctum et confixum erat loculo sexdecim clavis ferreis longissimis. Quod cum difficultate fecissent, jussi sunt omnes longius abire, præter duos socios prænominatos.

Eratque locus ita repletus sancto corpore, et in longitudine et in latitudine, quod vix posset acus interponi inter caput et lignum, vel inter pedes et lignum: et jacebat caput unitum corpori, aliquantum levatum parvo cervicali.

Abbas ergo intuens cominus, invenit post pannum sericum velantem totum corpus, et postea pannum lineum miri candoris; et super caput pannum parvum lineum, et postea alium parvum pannum sericum effabilem, tanquam hoc esset velum alicujus sanctimonialis feminae. Et postea invenerunt corpus involutum lineo panno; et tunc demum patue-

So while the monastery slept, those twelve dressed in white, drew the coffin from the shrine, and bore it and placed it on a table near the old place of the shrine. And they prepared themselves to remove the cover, which was joined and fastened to the coffin with sixteen very long iron nails. And when they had with difficulty done this, all were ordered to stand afar off, save the two associates above mentioned.

Now the coffin was filled with the holy body, and that both in respect of its length and of its breadth, so that it was hardly possible for a needle to be placed between the head and the wood, or between the feet and the wood. And the head lay joined to the body, being a little raised by a small pillow.

And so the abbot looking near, found after this a silken cloth which covered the whole body, and then a linen cloth of wonderful whiteness; and over the head a little linen cloth, and another small and skilfully made silken cloth, as it were the veil of some holy woman. And then they found the body wrapped in a linen cloth, and so at last all the lines of the holy body were clearly

runt omnia lineamenta sancti corporis. traceable.

Hie restitit abbas, dicens se non esse ausum ultra procedere, ut sanctam carnem nudam videret. Accipiens ergo caput inter manus suas, gemendo ait: "Gloriose martyr, sancte Ædmonde, benedicta sit illa hora qua natus fuisti. Gloriose martyr, ne veritas michi in perditionem audaciam meam, quod te tango, peccator et miser: tu scis devotionem et intentionem meam." Et procedens tetigit oculos et nasum valde grossum, et valde eminentem, et postea tetigit pectus et brachia, et sublevans manum sinistram digitos tetigit, et digitos suos posuit inter digitos sanctos. Et procedens invenit pedes rigide erectos tanquam hominis hodie mortui, et digitos pedum tetigit, et tangendo numeravit.

Here the abbot stopped, saying that he dared not go further, and behold the naked body of the saint. Therefore, he held his head between his hands, and said with a groan, "Glorious martyr, holy Edmund, blessed be that hour in the which you were born. Glorious martyr, turn not my daring to my hurt, in that I, who am a sinner and wretched, touch you. You know my devotion and my intention." And then he touched the eyes and nose, the latter being thick and very large, and afterwards touched the breast and arms, and raising the left hand touched the fingers and placed his own fingers between those of the saint. And going further, he found the feet standing upright as though they had been the feet of a man but lately dead, and he touched the toes, and counted them as he touched them.

Datumque est consilium, ut cæteri fratres vocarentur et miracula viderent, et venerunt sex vocati et sex alii fratres cum illis qui se intruserunt sine assensu abbatis, et videbant sanctum corpus; scilicet, Walterus de Sancto Albano, et Hugo infirmarius, et Gilbertus frater prioris, et Ricardus de Hehingham, et Jocellus celerarius, et Tursta-

And then counsel was taken that other brothers should be summoned and behold these miraculous things, and six came upon summons, and six other brothers who forced their way in without the assent of the abbot, and these saw the holy body. Their names were Walter de St. Alban's, Hugh the farmer, Gilbert the prior's brother, Ri-

nus Parvus, qui solus manum apposuit et pedes sancti tetigit et genua. Et, ut esset copia testium, disponente Altissimo, unus ex nostris fratribus Johannes de Dice sedens supra testitudinem[†] ecclesiæ, cum servientibus de vestiario, omnia ista evidenter videbat.

His factis, affigebatur operculum loculo eisdem clavis et totidem, et simili modo, ut prius, cooperto martyre eisdem pannis et eodem ordine, sicut prius inventus fuit. Et postea collocatus est loculus in solito loco, et positus est super loculum, juxta angelum, furculus quidam sericus, in quo reposita fuit schedula Anglice scripta, continens quasdam salutationes Ailwini monachi, ut creditur, quæ schedula prius tuit inventa juxta angelum aureum quando loculus detegebatur.

chard de Hengham, Jocell the cellarer, and Thurstan the Little; and the last alone put forth his hand and touched the feet and knees of the saint. And, that there might be abundance of witnesses, by the disposition of the Highest, one of our brothers, John de Diss, sat on the roof of the church with the servants of the vestry, and saw all these things plainly.

After these things had been done, the cover was fastened on the coffin with the same nails as before, and with the same number and in the same manner, and the martyr was covered with the same cloths and those in the same order, as he had first been found. And then the coffin was placed in its accustomed place, and on the coffin, near the angel, there was placed a certain silken bag, in which a document, written in English, was put setting forth certain salutations of Aylwin the monk,¹⁴² as it is said, and this document was before found near the golden angel when the coffin was uncovered.

[†]Testudinem?

¹⁴²He was chief keeper of the shrine, in the days before the substitution of monks for secular clergy. On the news of the invasion of Sweyn (1010) he removed the relics to London, where they remained for three years. At a subsequent date he became a monk at the monastery of St. Edmund. An account of him is to be found in Hermannus (*Mem.*, I., 35–42), and in Samson's work, *De Miraculis Sancti Aedmundi* (*Mem.*, I., 116–132). Rokewode (pp. 153–4) quotes a passage on Aylwin from Lydgate's metrical life of the saint.

Et iubente abbate, statim scriptum fuit et aliud breve, et in eodem furulo reconditum, sub hac forma verborum: "Anno ab incarnatione Domini m^o c. nonagesimo octavo, abbas Samson, tractus devotione, corpus sancti Ædmundi vidit et tetigit, nocte proxima post festum sanctæ Katerinæ, his testibus—" et subscripta sunt nomina decem et octo monachorum.

And by order of the abbot another little writing was also made, and hidden in the same bag, and the words of this second writing were as follows. "In the year of the incarnation of the Lord one thousand one hundred and ninety eight, abbot Samson, being led by devotion, saw and touched the body of St. Edmund, on the night next after the feast of St. Catherine, in the presence of these witnesses,"—and there were written below the names of the eighteen monks.

Involuerunt autem fratres totum loculum panno lineo satis apto, et posuerunt desuper pannum sericum pretiosum et novum, quem Hubertus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis eodem anno obtulerat, et quendam pannum lineum duplicatum ad longitudinem loculi posuerunt proximum lapidi, ne locus vel alveolus ejus posset lædi a lapide. Et postea portati sunt panelli et decenter conjuncti in feretro.

Then the brothers wrapped the whole coffin in a sufficiently large linen cloth, and placed above it a valuable new silken cloth, which Hubert, archbishop of Canterbury, had sent as an offering in the same year, and they placed a certain double linen cloth of the same length as the coffin next the stone, that neither the coffin nor the wooden platform on which it rested might be injured by the stone. After this the panels were brought up and fitly joined together in the shrine.

Cum autem veniret conventus ad matutinas cantandas, et ista perciperet, doluerunt omnes qui hæc non viderant, intra se dicentes: "quod male seducti sumus." Cantatis autem horis matutinis, convocavit abbas conventum ante magnum altare, et

And when the monastery came to chant matins, and saw these things, all who had not seen the body were grieved, and said among themselves, "We have been grossly deceived." But when the hours of matins had been chanted, the abbot called the mona-

ostendens eis breviter rem gestam, allegabat quod non debuit nec potuit omnes vocare ad talia. Quibus auditis, cum lacrimis “Te Deum laudamus” cantavimus, et ad campanas in choro resonandas properavimus.

stery before the high altar, and having briefly explained to them that which had been done, declared that it was neither right nor possible to summon them all to such events. And on hearing this, we sang, “Te Deum laudamus” with tears, and hastened to ring the bells in the choir.

Quarto die sequente, custodes feretri, et custodem sancti Botulfi, deposuit abbas; novos substituens et leges eis proponens, ut sanctuaria honestius et diligentius custodirent. Magnumque altare, quod prius concavum erat, ubi sæpius quædam indecenter reponebantur, et spatium illud quod erat inter feretrum et altare, solidari fecit lapide et cemento, ne aliquid ignis periculum fieri possit per negligentiam custodum, sicut prius, juxta dictum sapientis dicentis:

“Felix, quem faciunt
aliena pericula cau-
tum.”†

Four days later the abbot deposed the guardians of the shrine, and the guardian of the shrine of St. Botolph,¹⁴³ and he appointed new guardians for whom he laid down rules, that they might take more honest and diligent care of the sanctuaries. And the great altar, up to this time, was concave, and on it things were often placed with little reverence. This space and that which was between the shrine and the altar, he caused to be filled up with stone and cement, that there might be no danger of fire possible for the negligence of the guardians, as had been the case before, according to that which a wise man says, Happy is he whom the perils of others make cautious.

¹⁴³The relics of St. Botolph, “the kindly priest,” were translated, together with other relics, at the time of the translation of the body of St. Edmund by abbot Baldwin in 1095. (Hermannus, *Mem.* I., 88.) Nothing authentic is really known of him, but the supposed date of his death is 655.

† Erasmus, in the *Adagia*, gives this line as a “vulgo jactatus versus.”

*How king John visited the
abbey soon after his
accession.
A.D. 1199.*

Cum abbas
emisset favo-
rem et gratiam
regis Ricardi
donis et denariis, ita quod omnia
negotia sua crederet posse perficere
pro suo desiderio, mortuus est rex
Ricardus, et abbas perdidit opera[†] et
impensam. Rex autem Johannes post
coronationem suam, omissis omnibus
aliis negotiis suis, statim venit ad sanc-
tum Ædmundum voto et devotione
tractus. Nos vero credebamus quod
oblaturus esset aliquid magnum; pan-
num quidem sericum unum obtulit,
quem servientes ejus a nostro sacrista
mutuo acceperant, nec adhuc pretium
reddiderunt.

Hospitium vero sancti Ædmundi su-
scepit, magnis celebratum expensis, et
recedens nichil omnino honoris vel be-
neficii sancto contulit, præter xiiij. ster-
lingos, quos ad missam suam obtulit,
die qua recessit a nobis.

When the abbot had purchased the
favour and grace of king Richard with
gifts and money, so that he believed
that he could carry through all his
affairs according to his desire, king
Richard died, and the abbot lost his
labour and expenditure. But king Jo-
hn after his coronation, laying aside
all his other work, at once came to St.
Edmund's,¹⁴⁴ being led to do so by his
vow and devotion. And we thought
that he would have made some great
offering, but he offered a silken cloth,
which his servants borrowed from our
sacristan and have not yet paid for.

He enjoyed the hospitality of St. Ed-
mund, which involved great expenses,
and when he left he gave nothing at all
honourable or beneficial to the saint,
except thirteen pence sterling, which
he paid for a mass for himself, on the
day on which he departed from us.

[†]operam?

¹⁴⁴ The visit of John to St. Edmund's is mentioned by Diceto (II., 166). Rokewode (p. 154) notes a second visit of John, when he acted with greater generosity, making an annual grant of ten marks. Even on this occasion, however, the gift was only in return for the giving back of a previous gift which he had made of a valuable ring, and which was to be returned to him for his life.

*Concerning the dispute
between the porter and the
monks.*

Eo tempore conquesti sunt quidam obedientiarii nostri, dicentes in capitulo, Radulfum janitorem, servientem nostrum, stare in causis et querelis contra eos in damnum ecclesiæ et in præjudicium conventus. Præceptumque fuit a priore, de communi assensu, ut castigaretur secundum consuetudinem nostram, qua solent castigari servientes nostri, scilicet per subtractionem stipendiorum suorum.

Præceptum est ergo, ut celerarius subtraheret ei, non conredium quod de jure pertinebat ad officium suum, secundum attestationem cartæ suæ, sed quasdam adjectiones et gratias quas celerarii et subcelerarii ei fecerant, inconsulto conventu. Radulfus vero prædictus, assumtis secum quibusdam de mensa abbatis, conquestus est abbati redeunti de Lundoniis, quod prior et conventus dissaisiaverant eum de conredio suo, quo saisiatus fuit quando abbas venit primo ad abbatiam. Dixerunt etiam abbati, quod hoc factum fuit sine eo, et ad dedecus suum, et irrationabiliter, eo inconsulto et causa incognita.

At that time some of our officials complained and said in the chapter that Ralph the porter, our servant, appeared in cases and suits against them to the injury of the church and to the prejudice of the monastery. The prior commanded, with the common assent of the monastery, that he should be punished according to our custom by which our servants were wont to be punished, that is by the confiscation of their incomes.

Therefore orders were given that the cellarer should withdraw from him, not the salary which of right pertained to his office, according to the witness of his charter, but certain additions and grants which the cellarer and subcellarer had made to him, without the assent of the monastery. But the same Ralph, taking with him certain of those of the table of the abbot, complained to the abbot on his return from London, that the prior and the monastery had deprived him of his salary, of which he was possessed when the abbot first came into the abbacy. And they told the abbot that this was done without him, and to his shame, and unreasonably, when he was not consulted and the case was not tried.

Abbas vero credidit, et aliter quam decebat, vel solebat, motus est, Radulfum constanter excusans et innocentem esse protestans, veniensque in capitulum, et inde conquerens, dixit tale quid factum esse in præiudicio, eo inconsulto. Responsumque est ab uno, cæteris omnibus conclamantibus, hoc esse factum per priorem, et assensum totius capituli.

Abbas vero inde confusus, et dicens, “filios enutrivisti et exaltavi, ipsi vero spreverunt me,” nichil dissimulans, sicut deceret propter pacem multitudinis, sed potius potentiam suam ostendens, nec vinci se sustinens, publice præcepit celerario, ut omnia sublata Radulfo plene et integre redderet, nec biberet aliquid nisi aquam, donec omnia redderet.

Jocellus vero celerarius, hoc audiens, elegit magis illa die bibere aquam, quam reddere conredium Radulfo contra voluntatem conventus; quod cum abbas scivisset, in crastino prohibuit celerario et esum et potum donec

Then the abbot believed this, and was moved more than was right or usual with him, and constantly excusing Ralph and protesting that he was innocent, came into the chapter. And making complaint on this matter, he said that what was done, was done to his prejudice, since he was not consulted. Then one answered, all the rest supporting him, that this had been done by the prior and with the assent of the whole chapter.

Thereupon the abbot was confused, and said, “I have nourished and brought up children, and they have rebelled against me.”¹⁴⁵ And passing over nothing, as he should have done for the peace of the multitude, but rather showing his power, and not allowing himself to be overcome, he publicly commanded the cellarer that he should fully and completely restore all things which had been taken away to the said Ralph, and that he should drink nothing but water until he had restored all things.

But when Jocell the cellarer heard this, he chose rather to drink water on that day, than to return Ralph his salary contrary to the will of the monastery. And when the abbot learnt this, on the morrow he forbade the cellarer to eat

¹⁴⁵ Isai. i., 2.

omnia redderet. His dictis, statim recessit abbas de villa, et absentavit se octo diebus.

How disturbances arose in the monastery, and of the end to which they came.

Eo die, quo recesserat abbas, surrexit celarius in capitulo, et præceptum abbatis ostendens, tenensque claves suas in manu, dixit, se malle deponi de bailia sua, quam aliquid facere contra conventum. Factusque est tumultus magnus in conventu, qualem nunquam prius vidi; dixeruntque præceptum abbatis non esse tenendum. Seniores vero et sapientiores de conventu, discrete tacentes, tandem pronuntiaverunt obediendum esse abbati in omnibus, nisi in manifestis contra Deum, et assensum præbuerunt, ut hanc turpitudinem ad tempus sustineremus propter bonum pacis, ne deterius contingeret.

Cumque prior incepisset cantare “Verba mea” pro defunctis, sicut consuetudo est, restiterunt novitii et cum eis fere media pars conventus, et sublimi voce reclamaverunt et contradixerunt. Et prævaluit tamen senior pars conventus, licet pauci essent numero in respectu cæteræ multitudinis.

or drink until he had made complete restitution. And having spoken thus, the abbot at once left the town, and absented himself for eight days.

On the day of the abbot's departure, the cellarer arose in the chapter, and showing the command of the abbot, and holding his keys in his hand, said that he would rather be deposed from his office than do anything against the monastery. And there arose a great disturbance in the monastery, such as I never saw before; and they said that the command of the abbot ought not to be observed. But the older and wiser men of the monastery, who wisely kept silence, at last declared that obedience was due to the abbot in all things, unless they were clearly against God, and they agreed in declaring that we must bear with this evil doing for a time and for the sake of peace, lest worst should befall us.

And when the prior had begun to chant the Verba Mea¹⁴⁶ for the dead, as was the custom, the novices resisted, and with them almost half the monastery, and with a loud voice they disputed and opposed him. Yet the older half of the monastery prevailed, though they were few in number as

¹⁴⁶Ps. v., 1.

compared with the multitude on the other side.

Abbas vero absens per internuntios quosdam minis terruit, quosdam blanditiis attraxit, et majores de conventu, tanquam timerent tunicæ suæ, a consilio universitatis separavit, ut adimpleretur illud evangelium, “omne regnum in se divisum desolabitur.” Et dixit abbas, se nequaquam venturum inter nos propter conspirationes et iuramenta quæ, ut aiebat, feceramus in eum, cnpulis nostris occidendum.

Now the abbot, being absent, frightened some by his threatening messages, and won over some with his graciousness, and he caused the chief men to abandon the views of the whole body, as though they feared his garments. And so the gospel was fulfilled, “Every kingdom divided against itself is brought to desolation.”¹⁴⁷ And the abbot said that he would in nowise come among us, owing to our conspiracies and the oaths which, as he said, we had taken against him, that we would kill him with our knives.

Rediens ergo domum sedensque in talamo suo, uni ex fratribus nostris, qui ei magis suspectus erat, mandavit ut ad eum veniret, et quia ad eum venire noluit, timens capi et ligari, excommunicatus est, et postea tota die compeditus, residens usque mane in domo infirmorum. Tres vero alios innodavit abbas leviori sententia, ut cæteri timerent.

Then he returned home and sat in his chamber. And he sent word to one of our brothers, who was greatly suspected by him, that he should come to him, and because he would not come, as fearing that he would be taken and bound, he was excommunicated, and for a whole day afterwards he was placed in bonds and remained until morning in the infirmary. The abbot bound three others with a smaller sentence, that the rest might fear.

In crastino initum est consilium, ut mandaretur abbas, et humiliaremur coram eo, verbo et gestu, quo animus

Next day counsel was taken to summon the abbot and to humble ourselves before him in word and gesture,

¹⁴⁷ Matt. xii., 25.

eius mitigari posset; factumque est ita. Ipse vero satis humiliter respondens, semper tamen justitiam suam allegans, et in nos culpam retorquens, cum vidit nos velle vinci, ipse victus est. Et perfusus lacrimis iuravit se nunquam doluisse aliqua de causa, sicut in hoc casu, tum propter se, tum propter nos, et maxime propter notam infamiæ, quæ jam publicaverat dissensionem nostram, dicendo monachos sancti Æmundi velle interficere suum abbatem.

Cumque narrasset abbas, qualiter absentasset se ex industria, donec ira sua deferbuisset, repetens dictum philosophi, "In te vindicassem nisi iratus fuisssem,"[†] lacrimans surrexit, et omnes et singulos recepit in osculo pacis. Ploravit ille; ploravimus et nos. Absoluti sunt illico fratres qui excommunicati fuerant, et sic "cessavit tempestas, et facta est tranquillitas magna."

Occulte tamen præcepit abbas, ut solitum conredium integre daretur Radulfo janitori, sicut prius; quam rem dissimulavimus, tandem comperien-

whereby his mind might be calmed, and so it was done. Then he answered with some humility, but always justifying himself and blaming us, and when he saw that we were ready to be conquered, he was overcome. And with many tears, he swore that he had never been so grieved for anything as for this matter, both for his own sake and for ours, and especially for the evil report, which had already spread abroad our dissension, and which said that the monks of St. Edmund wished to slay their abbot.

Then when the abbot had also told how he absented himself of intent until his anger should have cooled, and repeated the word of the philosopher, I would not have taken vengeance on you, unless I had been angry, he arose with tears and received all and every one of us with the kiss of peace. He wept, and we wept with him. Forthwith the excommunicated brothers were absolved, and thus the storm ceased and there was a great calm.¹⁴⁸

Yet the abbot secretly ordered that the accustomed salary should be given to Ralph the porter as before and in full. This we passed over, at last realising

[†] Cic. Tusc. iv. 36. Seneca, *De Ira*, i. 15: "Inde est quod Socrates servo ait, *Cæderem te nisi irascerer*." Lactantius (see Lipsius' note on the passage in Seneca) ascribes the saying to Archytas of Tarentum.

¹⁴⁸ Mark iv., 39.

tes, quod non est dominus qui dominari non velit, et periculosa est pugna quæ contra fortiorem initur et contra potentiolem arripitur.

*Concerning the knights of
Saint Edmund and their
fiefs.*

A.D. 1200.

bus sancti Ædmundi et de feudis eorum, unde antecessores eorum fuerunt feffati.

Albericus de Ver tenet quinque milites et dimidium; scilicet, in Lodenes et in Brom, unum militem; in Mendham et Prestun, j. militem; in Rede, j. militem; et in Cokefeld, dimidium; et in Livermere, duos milites.

Willielmus de Hastings tenet v. milites; scilicet, in Lidgate et in Blunham et in Herlinghe, tres milites; et in Tibebeham et in Gersinghe, duos.

Comes Rogerus tenet tres milites, in Nortune et Brisingeham.

Robertus filius Rogeri tenet j. mil. in Marlesford.

Allexander de Kirkebi tenet j. mil. in Kirkebi.

that there is no lord who does not wish to rule, and that it is a dangerous battle to strive against the stronger and to undertake a contest with the more powerful.

In the year of grace one thousand and two hundred, an account of the knights of St. Edmund and of their fiefs was made, of which their ancestors had keen possessed.

Alberic de Vere holds five knights and half a knight; that is, in Loddon, and in Brome, one knight; in Mendham and Preston, one knight; in Rede, one knight; and in Cokefield, half a knight; and in Livermere, two knights.

William de Hastings holds five knights; namely, in Lidgate and in Blunham and in Harling the fees of three knights, and in Tibenham and Gissing, two.

Earl Roger holds three knights in Nortune and Brisingeham.

Robert FitzRoger holds the fee of one knight in Marlesford.

Alexander de Kirkby holds the fee of one knight in Kirkby.

Rogerus de Hou tenet duos milites, in Michlesfela et in Topescroft.	Roger de Eu holds the fees of two knights in Mickfield and in Topescroft.
Arnaldus de Charneles et parcenarii eius j. militem, in Acle et in Quidenham, et in Turstune et Tutestun.	Arnald de Charneles and his partners, one knight in Oakley and in Quiddenham, and in Thurston and Stuston.
Oseburtus de Wachesham j. militem, in Marlingeford et in Wrtham.	Osbert de Wachesham, one knight in Marlingford and Wortham.
Willielmus de Totestoches j. militem, in Randestune.	William de Tostock, one knight in Randeston.
Gilbertus filius Radulfi tres milites; scilicet, in Teveltham et in Hepeword, j. militem; in Reidun et in Gersinge, j. militem; et in Saxham, j. militem.	Gilbert FitzRalph, three knights; namely, in Thelnetham and Hepworth one knight; in Reydon, in Blithing, and in Gissing one knight, and in Saxham one knight.
Radulfus de Bucheham dimidium militem, in antiquum Bucheham.	Radulf de Bukenham, half a knight in Old Bukenham.
Willielmus de Berdewella duos milites, in Berningham, et in Berdewelle, et in Hunterestune, et in Stantun.	William de Berdewell, two knights in Barningham, and in Berdewell, and in Hunston, and in Stanton.
Robertas de Langetot tenet tres milites, in Stowe, et in Asfeld, et in Trostune, et in parvo Waltham in Estsexia.	Robert de Langetot holds three knights, in Stowlangtoft and in Ashfield, in Troston, and in Little Waltham in Essex.
Adam de Kokefeld duos milites; scilicet, in Lavtnei et in Honus, j. militem, et Leleseia.	Adam de Cokefield, two knights, namely, in Lavenham and in Onehouse one knight, and in Lilesey.
Robertus filius Walteri j. militem, in magno Facheham, et in Sapestun.	Robert FitzWalter, one knight in Great Fakenham and in Sapeston.

Will. Blundus j. militem, in Torp.	William Blund, one knight in Thorp.
Gilbertus Peccatum duos milites; scilicet, in Waude et in Geddinge, j. mil.; in Falesham, et Eustuna, et in Grotena, j. militem.	Gilbert de Peche, two knights, namely in Waude and in Gedding one knight, and in Falsham and Euston and Groton one knight.
Gilbertus de sancto Claro duos milites, in Bradefelda et in Watlesfelda.	Gilbert de St. Clare, two knights in Bradfield and Wattisfield.
Galfridus de Welfetham et Gilbertus de Manetuna j. mil., in Weletham et in Manetuna.	Geoffrey de Whelnetham and Gilbert de Manston, one knight in Whelnetham and in Manston.
Hubertus de Hanesti dimidium militem, in Brighingeham.	Hubert de Ansty, half a knight in Bridginghoe.
Gervasius de Roinghe j. mil., in Clipleie et in Roinghe.	Gervase de Rothing, one knight in Chiplei and in Rothing.
Robertus de Halstede j. militem in Halsted, et dimidium in Broclei.	Robert de Halstede, one knight in Halstede and half a knight in Brockley.
Rejnaldus de Brocleie unum militem, in Broclei.	Reginald de Brockley, one knight in Brockley.
Simon de Pateshala dimidium militem, in Whatefeld.	Simon de Patteshall, half a knight in Whatefield.
Petrus filius Alani dimidium militem, in Broclei.	Peter FitzAlan, half a knight in Brockley.
Radulfus de Presseni dimidium militem, in Stanesfeld.	Ralph de Pressenei, half a knight in Stanningfield.
Ricardus de Ikeworda duos milites, in Ikeworda et in Wanford.	Richard de Ickworth, two knights in Ickworth and in Wangford.

Robertus de Horning dimidium mil., in Horning.	Robert de Horning, half a knight in Horningsherth.
Walterus de Saxham j. militem, in Asfelde et in Saxham.	Walter de Saxham, one knight in Ashfield and Saxham.
Willielmus de Wridewell dimidium militem, in Whelfetham.	William de Wordwell, half a knight in Whelnetham.
Normannus de Risebi dimidium militem, in Risebi.	Norman de Risby, half a knight in Risby.
Petrus de Liveremere et Alanus de Fletmetun j. militem, in Liveremere et in Ametuna.	Peter de Livermere and Alan de Fletmetun, one knight in Livermere and Ampton.
Rogerus de Muriaus j. militem, in Torp.	Roger de Muriaux, one knight in Thorp.
Hugo de Illeghe, in Illeghe, et in Prestuna, et in Bradefeld, ij. milites.	Hugh de Eleigh, two knights in Eleigh and Preston and Bradfield.
Stephanus de Brochedis unum quater, in Brochedis.	Stephen de Brockdish, a fourth of one knight in Brockdish.
Adam de Berningham j. quater, in Berningham.	Adam de Barningham, a fourth of one knight in Barningham.
Willielmus de Wridewell, in parvo Liveremere, et in Wridewell, j. quater.	William de Wordwell, a fourth of one knight in Livermere and Wordwell.
<i>Concerning the manors of Geoffrey Ruffus, and the cellar.</i> Galfridus Ruffus monachus noster, licet nimis seculariter se gereret, utilis fuit nobis in	Geoffrey Ruffus, our monk, though he lived in rather too secular a manner, was of use to us in the custody of four manors, Barton, Pakenham, Rougham, and Bradfield, where there had often

custodia ⁱⁱⁱ^{or} maneriorum, Bertuna, Pakeham, Rucham, Bradefeld, ubi prius defectus sæpe solebat esse de firmis. Audiens abbas infamiam continentiae ejus, diu dissimulavit, forte quia Galfridus utilis videbatur universitati. Tandem, cognita veritate, subito fecit capi cistas ejus, positas in vestiario, et omnia instauramenta maneriorum districte custodiri, et eundem Galfridum posuit in claustrum. Inventa fuit vis magna auri et argenti, ad valentiam cc. marcarum, quod totum dixit abbas esse apponendum ad fabricandum frontem feretri sancti Ædmundi.

Instante festo sancti Michaelis, decretum est in capitulo, ut duo fratres, non unus solus, succederent ad custodiendum maneria, quorum unus erat R. de Hehingham, qui publice promisit se velle et se bene posse custodire simul maneria et cellariam, et assensum præbuit abbas, sed conventu invito; et depositus est Jocellus de cellaria, qui bene et provide instauraverat officium suum, et duobus annis rexerat cellariam, sine debito, contra consuetudinem aliorum celerariorum, et factus est subcelerarius. In fine autem anni, reddens R. celerarius rationem de receptis et expensis, protestatus est se accepisse lx. marcas de instauramentis maneriorum ad supplendum defec-

in former times been a deficiency in rent. But when the abbot heard ill reports of his morals, for a long while he concealed the matter, perchance because Geoffrey was clearly useful to the whole community. At last, when the truth was known, he suddenly caused his chests to be taken and placed in the vestry, and all the stock of the manors to be strictly guarded, and placed the said Geoffrey in the cloister. There was found a great store of gold and silver to the value of two hundred marks, and all of this the abbot decreed should be devoted to the building of the front of the shrine of St. Edmund.

And when Michaelmas came it was decided in the chapter that two brothers, and not one alone, should succeed to the custody of the manors. Of these one was Roger de Hengham, who publicly promised that he would as well as he could take charge both of the manors and the cellar, and the abbot assented to this, though the monastery was unwilling. Jocell, the cellarer, was then deposed. He had well and providently managed his office, and had controlled the cellar for two years, without contracting debt, contrary to the custom of the other cellarers. And he was made subcellarer. But at the end of the year Roger rendered an account of his receipts and expenses, and de-

tum celerarii.

Inito ergo consilio, substitutus est prædictus Jocellus ad cellariam, et concessa sunt ei Mildenhala et Chebenhala et Sutwalda, et commissa sunt cætera maneria Rogero et Albino, et divisa sunt a cellaria, ne vel maneria distruerentur per cellariam, vel cellaria distrueretur per maneria.

*Concerning that which
occurred on the death of
Adam de Cokefield.*

Mortuo Adam de Cokefeld, potuit abbas accepisse ccc. marcas pro warda unicæ filiæ ejusdem Adæ; sed quia avus puellæ tulerat eam furtim, nec abbas potuit habere saisinam puellæ, nisi per auxilium archiepiscopi, abbas concessit wardam illam H. archiepiscopo Cantuariensi, acceptis c. libris.

Archiepiscopus, acceptis quingentis marcis, concessit Thomæ de Burgo, fratri camerarii Regis, wardam illam, et data fuit ei puella cum jure suo per manum abbatis. Thomas ergo statim petiit saisinam trium maneriorum quæ in manu nostra habuimus post

clared that he had received sixty marks from the stock of the manors to supplement the deficit of the cellarer.

Therefore, when counsel had been taken, the said Jocell was replaced at the cellar, and Mildenhall, and Chebenhall, and Southwold, and other manors were entrusted to Roger and Albinus, and were separated from the cellar, that neither the manors might be destroyed for the sake of the cellar, nor the cellar destroyed for the sake of the manors.

When Adam de Cokefield was dead,¹⁴⁹ the abbot could have taken three hundred marks for the wardship of the only daughter of Adam; but as the grandfather of the maid had secretly removed her, and the abbot could not obtain possession of her person, save with the held of the archbishop, he granted that wardship to Hubert, archbishop of Canterbury, on receipt of a hundred pounds.

The archbishop, when he had received five hundred marks, granted that wardship to Thomas de Burgh, brother of the chamberlain of the king, and the maiden was given to him with her right by the hand of the abbot. Thomas then at once sought seisin

¹⁴⁹Cp. note to p. 153.

mortem Adæ; Kokefeld, Semere, et Grotona; credentes, quod omnia possemus retinere in dominico nostro, vel saltem duo, Semere et Grotona; tum quia Robertus de Cokefeld, in extremis agens, dixerat publice, se nichil in illis ij. maneriis jure hæreditario posse vindicare, tum quia Adam filius ejus in plena curia reassignaverat nobis illa duo maneria, et cartam suam inde fecit, qua continetur, quod ille tenet ilia ij. maneria per gratiam conventus, solummodo in vita sua.

Thomas ergo, quærens inde breve de recognitione, fecit summoneri milites, ut venirent apud Theochesberie, coram Rege juraturi. Carta nostra lecta in publico nullam vim habuit, quia tota curia erat contra nos. Juramento facto, dixerunt milites se nescire de cartis nostris, nec de privatis conventionibus; sed se credere dixerunt, quod Adam et pater ejus et avus a centum annis retro tenuerant maneria in feudum firmum, unusquisque post alium, diebus quibus fuerunt vivi et mortui; et sic dissaisiati sumus per judicium curiæ post multos labores et multas expensas factas, salvis tamen antiquis firmis annuatim reddendis.

of three manors, which had been in our hand after the death of Adam, Cokefield, Semere, and Groton. We thought that we could retain them all in our demesne, or at least two of them,—Semere and Groton, both because Robert de Cokefield on his deathbed had publicly declared that he claimed no hereditary right in those two manors, and because his son Adam in full court had acknowledged our right to those two manors, and had given his charter on the point, wherein it was laid down that he held those two manors, by the grace of the monastery, for his life only.

When Thomas, then, sought a writ of recognition on the matter, he caused the knights to be summoned to come to make oath before the king at Tewkesbury. Our charters read in public had no weight, for the whole court was against us. And when oath had been made, the knights said that they knew nothing of our charters, or of private agreements; but they said that they believed that Adam and his father and grandfather for a hundred years back had held the manors in fee-farm, and each after the other, on the days when they were alive and dead. So we were disseised by the judgment of the court after undergoing many labours and many expenses, though the old annual

payments of rent were preserved.

*How the abbot received the
abbot of Cluny.
A.D. 1200.*

Videbatur dominus abbas “decipi quam specie recti,”[†] quia scilicet scriptura dicit, “honorem meum alteri non dabo.” Abbat Cluniacensi venienti ad nos, et a nobis sicut decuit suscepto, cedere noluit abbas noster, nec in capitulo, nec ad processionem factam die dominico, quin sederet et staret medius inter abbatem Cluniacensem et abbatem Certesiensem; unde diversi diversa sentiebant et multi multa locuti sunt.

*How Robert the prior died,
and of the discussion as to
his successor.*

Languescente Roberto priore et adhuc vivente, dictæ sunt multæ sententiæ de substituendo priore. Narravit ergo aliquis, quod dominus abbas, sedens in choro et omnes fratres intuens, a primo usque ad ultimum, non invenit aliquem, super quem requiesceret spiritus[‡] ejus ad faciendum priorem, nisi Herebertum capellanum ejus. His et consimilibus voluntas domini abbatis pluribus clar-

The lord abbot seemed to be deceived by some appearance of right, because the scripture truly says, I will not give my glory to another.¹⁵⁰ For when abbot of Cluny¹⁵¹ came to us, and was received by us as was fitting, our abbot would not give place to him, either in the chapter or in the procession which took place on the Sunday, but sat and stood between the abbot of Cluny and the abbot of Chertsey. And upon this there were different opinions, and many said many things.

While Robert the prior was ill and still lived, there was much talk as to the appointment of a new prior. Then one said that the lord abbot, sitting in the choir and beholding all the brothers, from the first to the last, had not found anyone on whom his spirit might rest to make him prior, save Heribert his chaplain. By these and other like things the will of the abbot was made clear to many. And on hearing this, another answered that this was incredible; he asserted that the abbot,

[†] Hor. de Art. Poet. 25.

¹⁵⁰ Isai. xlii, 8.

¹⁵¹ An account of the visit of the abbot of Cluny is to be found in Diceto (II., 173). The abbot was Hugh, who had been abbot of Reading. Rokewode (p. 155) mentions that this case was quoted to prove that the English Benedictine abbots owed no allegiance to Cluny.

[‡] Num. xi. 26.

uit. Audiens hæc aliquis respondit, hoc esse incredibile; asserens quod abbas, homo industrius et sapiens, nunquam tali homini, et juveni et fere imberbi novicio xij. annorum, qui non nisi iiiij^{or} annis claustralis fuit, nec probatus in regimine animarum, nec in scientiæ doctrina,—“tali,” inquit, “nunquam dabit prioratum.”

Mortuo autem priore, morabatur abbas apud Londonias; et dixit quidam: “Nondum transiit mensis quod abbas fecit Herebertum capellanum subsacristam, et quando bailiam illam ei commisit in capella sancti Nigasii, promittendo, quod, si posset aliquo modo eum priorem facere, curam omnimodam ad hoc adhiberet.” Audiens hoc aliquis, volens placere abbati et priori futuro, plures sollicitavit in precibus, senes cum junioribus, ut, data opportunitate, Herebertum nominarent, saltem cum aliquibus aliis, ad prioratum; et juravit quod per hoc possent placere abbati, quia talis fuit voluntas ejus.

Erant autem multi, tam de senioribus quam de junioribus, qui eundem Herebertum hominem amabilem et affabilem asserebant, et dignum magno honore. Erant et alii, pauci quidem numero, sed consilio laudabi-

a man diligent and provident, would never give the office of prior to such a man, who was a youth and almost a beardless novice twelve years before, who had only been a cloistered monk for four years, and who was not proved in the rule of souls.

Then when the prior was dead, the abbot was in London, and one said, “A month has not yet passed since the abbot made Heribert chaplain and subsacristan, and when he gave that post to him in the chapel of St. Nicasia, he did so with a promise that if it were in any way possible to make him prior, he would devote all his care to doing so.” Another heard this, and wishing to please the abbot and him who was to be prior, made request to many, both old and young, that when opportunity was given they would nominate Heribert, at least in conjunction with others, for the office of prior. And he swore that in this way they would please the abbot, for such was his will.

And there were, indeed, many both among the older and among the younger men, who asserted that the same Heribert was an amiable and affable man, and worthy of great honour. And there were others also, few indeed in

liores et de saniore parte conventus, qui magistrum Hermerum supprior, hominem maturum, literatum et eloquentem, in animarum regimine peritum et expertum, qui tunc temporis xiiij. annis claustrum disciplinate rexerat, supprior probatus, et notus,—hunc, inquam, volebant præferre ad prioratum, juxta illud sapientis, “experto crede magistro.” Sed latenter grunniebat multitudo in contrarium; dicens illum esse hominem iracundum, impatientem, inquietum, turbulentum et anxium, litigiosum et turbatorem pacis, illudentes ei et dicentes quia “sapientia viri in ejus patientia dignoscitur.”†

Item dixit aliquis: “Hoc unum, tanquam scandalum, valde timendum est, ne supprior‡ removeatur, clerici literati habitum religionis de cetero dedignentur suscipere penes nos, si forte contingat aliquam statuam mutam erigi, et truncum ligneum præferri in tali conventu;” et adjecit idem frater, dicens quod talis deberet esse prior nostri conventus, ut, si quid majoris oriretur quæstionis de ecclesiasticis vel sæcularibus negotiis, abbate absente,

number, but more praised in counsel and from the wiser section of the monastery, who wished for master Hermer, the subprior, a mature man, learned and eloquent, skilled and experienced in the rule of souls, who had then ruled the cloister with success for fourteen years, an approved subprior and one known. They wished, I say, that he might be preferred to the post of prior, according to the word of wisdom, Trust an experienced master. But the multitude secretly murmured to the contrary, saying that he was a man of ill temper, impatient, restless, turbulent, nervous, litigious, a disturber of the peace. And they mocked him, saying that “the wisdom of a man appears in his patience.”

One also said, “There is this one thing which, as it is a scandal, as it a scandal, must be greatly feared, that the sub-prior being removed, learned clerks may not condescend to receive the garb of religion among us, if perchance it happen that some dumb idol be raised up, and a wooden log preferred in so great a monastery.” And the same brother added that such a man should be prior of our monastery that, if any matter connected with some great question of ecclesiastical or secular busi-

† Prov. xix. 11.

‡ si excidisse videtur ante *supprior*.

ad priorem quasi ad maiorem et discretiorem posset referri.

Hæc et consimilia audiens, quidam fratrum ait: “Quid est quod verba tot et talia multiplicatis? Cum abbas domum venerit, voluntatem suam inde faciet: forte quæret consilium singulorum et sigillatim et cum magna solemnitate; sed in fine operis sui, per allegationes et per rationes verisimiles et circumlocutiones verborum, tandem descendet ad voluntatem suam implendam; et sicut ipse præcogitavit, futurum est negotium.”

How Heribert was elected prior.

multa proposuit et satis eloquenter, qualis deberet esse prior substituendus; et respondit Johannes tertius prior, coram omnibus, suppriorem dignum esse et idoneum. Sed statim reclamavit multitudo, dicens: “Homo pacis, homo pacis detur nobis.” Responderunt duo ex nobis tantæ multitudini, dicentes talem esse substituendum, qui novit regere animas, et discernere “inter lepram et lepram,”

ness arose, while the abbot was absent, it might be referred to the prior as to one who was the highest and most discreet member.

When he heard these and other like sayings, one of the brothers said, “Why is it that you multiply so many and such words? When the abbot shall come home, he will do what he wills on this matter. Perchance he will seek counsel from all of us and that privately and with much solemnity; but eventually, by arguments and plausible reasonings and twisting words, he will at last reach the fulfilment of his will. And as he has beforehand decided, so will the matter go.”

Reverso ergo abbate, in capitulo sedente,

Then the abbot returned and as he sat in the chapter, he put forward many things with sufficient eloquence as to the type of man who ought to be made prior. And John the third prior answered, in the presence of all, that the supprior was worthy, and a suitable person. But at once the multitude cried out, saying, “Give us a man of peace, a man of peace.” And two of us answered so great a multitude, and said that such a man ought to be appointed as knew how to rule souls, and to discern between leprosy and leprosy;¹⁵² and this speech was very displeasing sin-

¹⁵²Deut. xvii., 8.

quod verbum valde displicebat, quia videbatur fovere partem supprioris.

Abbas autem tumultum audiens, dixit se velle, post capitulum, consilium singulorum audire, ut sic consulte procederet in negotio, et in crastino, secundum sese[†] esse operaturum. Interim dixit aliquis, quod abbas talem sollemnitatem faceret, ut supprior removeretur caute a prioratu; tanquam hoc fieret per consilium conventus, et non per voluntatem abbatis, et ipse abbas haberetur excusatus; et hac arte obstrueretur os loquentium iniqua.[‡]

In crastino, sedente abbate in capitulo, lacrimatus est valde: dicens, se totam noctem duxisse insomnem præ anxietate et timore, si aliquem nominaret qui Deo non placeret; juravitque in periculo animæ suæ, se nominaturum quatuor ex nobis, qui secundum opinionem suam magis essent utiles et idonei, ut unum ex illis *iiij*^{or} eligere-mus. Nominavit ergo abbas in primis sacristam, de quo constabat ei quod impotens et insufficiens erat, sicut ipse sacrista testatus est cum juramen-

ce it seemed to favour the party of the subprior.

But the abbot, hearing this tumult, said that he would, after chapter, hear the advice of all men, that so he might proceed wisely in the matter, and on the morrow would settle the affair as he would. And meanwhile one said that the abbot was proceeding with this ceremony that he might cautiously prevent the subprior from obtaining the office of prior, but as if this had been done by the advice of the monastery, and not by the will of the abbot, and that the abbot himself might be held as excused. By this art the mouth of them that speak lies should be stopped.

When the morrow came, the abbot sat in the chapter and wept bitterly. And he said that he had not slept all that night, owing to his anxiety and fear lest he might nominate someone who should not be pleasing to God; and he swore on the peril of his soul that he would nominate four of us, who according to his opinion were the most fitted and suitable, that we might choose one of the four. Then the abbot named first the sacristan, of whom he knew well that he was a weak and incompe-

[†]*res se?* Roke. Sed *secundum sese* potest significare *secundum voluntatem suam*, scilicet consilio prius habito cum aliis.

[‡]Ps. lxii. 12.

to. Statim, coram omnibus, nominavit etiam Johannem tertium priorem, suum consanguineum, et Mauricium capellanum suum et Herebertum prænominatum, omnes quidem juvenes, quasi xl. annorum vel infra, et omnes mediocris scientiæ, et ad regimen animarum potius docendi quam docit, dociles tamen.

Hos tres abbas nominavit et prætulit, postposito suppriori, et postpositis aliis pluribus senioribus, prioribus, maturioribus, literatis, et antiquitus magistris scholarum, et omnibus aliis. Morabatur autem abbas in loquendo, et commendando personam Johannis in multis, sed tamen allegando in contrarium, dicens, quod parentum multitudo hujus provinciæ collo ejus incumberet, si prior esset.

Et etiam cum vellet abbas (possetque) idem allegare de Mauricio, ut sic artificiose perveniret ad faciendam mentionem de Hereberto, interim interruptus est sermo ejus, dicente uno ex prioribus conventus: "Domine cantor, tuum est habere primam vocem: nomina dominum Herebertum." At ille, "Bonus homo est," inquit. Audito nomine Hereberti, abbas loquenda

tent man, as the sacristan himself witnessed with an oath. And at once before us all he named John the third prior, his relative, and Maurice his chaplain, and the said Heribert, all of whom were full young, about forty years old or less, and all of moderate intelligence, and men who needed to learn, rather than to teach, the rule of souls, though they were ready to learn.

The abbot nominated these three and put them forward, and he passed over the subprior and many other of the senior monks, who were older, more experienced, learned, and who included those who had formerly been masters of schools, and all the others. Then the abbot spoke at length and highly commended the person of John, but yet put forward also the opposite opinion, saying that the number of his relatives in this district would be a weight round his neck if he were made prior.

And as the abbot was ready to say the same of Maurice, as he could do, and thus craftily proceed to the mention of Heribert, his speech was interrupted, one of the older men of the monastery saying, "Master precentor, it is yours to speak first; nominate lord Herebert." Then the precentor said, "He is a good man." And when he heard the name of Heribert, the abbot ceased

suppressit, et conversus ad cantorem, dixit: "Herebertum recipiam libenter, si vultis."

His dictis, clamavit totus conventus, "Bonus homo est: bonus homo est et amabilis;" et hoc idem attestati sunt plures ex prioribus; statimque cantor et socius quidam cum eo, et alii duo ex alia parte cum omni festinatione surrexerunt, et Herebertum statuerunt in medio.

Herebertus vero in primis humiliter veniam cepit, dicens se insufficientem esse ad tantam dignitatem, et maxime, sicut dixit, quod non esset tam perfectæ scientiæ, quod sciret facere sermonem in capitulo, sicut deceret priorem. Obstupuerunt plures qui talia viderunt, et præ confusione obmutuerunt.

Abbas vero in consolatium ejus et quasi in præjudicium literatorum multa respondit, dicens quod bene posset recordari et ruminare alienos sermones, sicut et alii faciebant; colores rethoricos et phaleras verborum et exquisitas sententias in sermone damnabat, dicens quod in multis ecclesiis fit sermo in conventu Gallice vel potius Anglice, ut morum fieret ædificatio, non literaturæ ostensio. Quibus dictis, ivit prior jam receptus ad pedes abbatis,

speaking, and turning to the precentor said, "I will readily receive Heribert, if it is your wish."

At these words the whole monastery cried out, "He is a good man; he is a good man and lovable." And many of the older men witnessed this same thing, and at once the precentor and some friend with him, and two others from the other side, rose with all haste and placed Heribert in the midst.

But Heribert at first humbly begged to be excused, saying that he was unable to support so great an office, and especially, as he said, because he was not so well instructed as to be able to preach in the chapter, as the prior ought to do. Many were amazed when they saw such things, and were dumb with confusion.

But the abbot said much to console him, and as it were, in prejudice of learned men, saying that he was well able to remember and consider the sermons of others, as others did. And he condemned rhetorical colouring and elaborate verbiage, and neatly turned sentences in a sermon, saying that in many churches the sermon is delivered in French, or rather in English, for the securing of the improvement of manners, and not as a literary exerci-

et deosculatus est eos. Abbas autem cum lacrimis suscepit eum, et propria manu posuit eum in sede prioris, et præcepit omnibus ut debitam reverentiam et obedientiam ei deferrent sicut priori.

*How the author reflected
on the choice of Heribert.*

Facto capitulo, sedebam ego hospitarius in porticu aulæ hospitem, stupidus et revolvens in animo quæ videram et audieram; et subtiliter cogitare cœpi ob quam causam et propter quas meritum gratias, homo talis ad tantam dignitatem deberet promoveri. Et animadvertere incepti, quod homo est stature decentis, et personalis apparentiæ; homo pulcher facie et amabilis aspectu; semper hilaris, vultu risibilis tam mane quam sero, benignus omnibus; homo compositus in gestu, in incessu gravis, verbo facetus, dulcem vocem habens in cantando et facundam in legendo; juvenis, fortis, et sanus in corpore, et expeditus ad laborandum pro necessitate ecclesiæ; pro loco, pro tempore, nunc laicis, nunc clericis, nunc ecclesiasticis, nunc sæcularibus viris sciens se conformare; liberalis et socialis et facilis ad castigandum, non invidus, non suspiciosus, non avarus, non tædiosus, non de-

se. And when he had so spoken, the newly received prior went to the feet of the abbot, and kissed them. But the abbot received him with tears, and placed him with his own hand in the prior's stall, and commanded all that they should show him due reverence and obedience as their prior.

When the chapter was ended, I was sitting as guest-master in the porch of the guest-house, and I was amazed and revolved in my mind that which I had seen and heard. And I began to think subtly for what reason and for what special merits, such a man deserved to be promoted to so great a position. And I began to reflect that he was a man of comely stature and personal appearance, that he was a handsome man and had a kindly face; that he was always cheerful, and showed a smiling face early and late, and friendly to all men; that he was quiet in his manner, sober in his walk, polite in speech, with a sweet voice for chanting and good for reading. I reflected that he was young, strong, and sound in health, and fitted to labour for the needs of the church; that he knew how to suit himself to place and time, at one moment to laymen, at another to clerks, at another to the regular clergy, and at another to the secular men; that he was liberal, sociable, and facile; that

sidiosus; sobrius et volubilis linguæ in Gallico idiomate, utpote Normannus natione; homo mediocris intelligentiæ, quem si litteræ facerent insanire, homo perfectæ probitatis dici posset.

he was not spiteful in punishing, nor suspicious, nor greedy, nor tiring, nor lazy. I reflected that he was sober, and a fluent speaker in the French tongue, as he was a Norman by birth; that he was a man of fair intelligence, who, if learning would not drive him mad, at least could be called a man of absolute probity.